

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

20
26

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

1st
PREP
FIRST TERM



دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

• Unit 1:

Life in a Digital World

• Unit 2:

Learning to Learn

• Unit 3:

Role Models

• Review A:**• Unit 4:**

Smart Choices

• Unit 5:

Future Dreams

• Unit 6:

Global Citizens

• Review B:**Booklet :**



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea of a blog post about technology
- Identify specific details of a text about technology
- Use context clues to infer the meanings of words

Listening:

- Identify the main idea when people talk about using digital devices
- Identify specific details about how people use technology

Speaking:

- Express personal experiences and opinions about digital devices through speaking tasks

Language:

- Use grammatical structures (i.e., present simple and adverbs of frequency) to talk about digital habits
- Differentiate between different parts of speech (Noun, Verb, Adjective)

Writing:

Practice writing an email about daily routine using technology

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكراسة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

digital (adj)	رقمي	night mode (n)	الوضع الليلي
tablet (n)	جهاز لوحي (تابليت)	screen time (n)	
smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية	وقت استخدام الشاشة (الكمبيوتر / الهاتف)	
laptop (n)	حاسب محمول	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
website (n)	موقع إلكتروني	search (v) (ed)	يبحث عن
e-book (n)	كتاب إلكتروني		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

message (n)	رسالة	information (n)	معلومات
school friends (n)	أصدقاء المدرسة	online games (n)	ألعاب على الانترنت
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي	bedtime (n)	وقت النوم
outdoor activities	أنشطة خارجية	amazing (adj)	رائع / مذهل
diesel (n)	سولار	useful (adj)	مفيد
pollution (n)	تلوث	wisely (adv)	بحكمة / بطريقة حكيمة
company (n)	شركة	whole day (n)	يوم كامل
navigation (n)	ملاحة	hybrid bus (n)	حافلة هجينة
greener (adj)	أكثر صداقة للبيئة	energy (n)	طاقة
funny pictures (n)	صور مضحكة	environment (n)	البيئة
adventure story (n)	قصة مغامرات	sleep (n) (v)	ينام / نوم
app (n)	تطبيق (برنامج على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)	affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر على
facts (n)	حقائق	launch (v) (ed)	يُدشن / يُطلق
digital tools (n)	الأدوات الرقمية	share (v) (d)	يشارك
space (n)	الفضاء	check (v) (ed)	يتفقد / يفحص
digital devices (n)	الأجهزة الرقمية	type (v) (d)	يكتب على لوحة مفاتيح
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	reduce (d)	يقلل
habit (n)	عادة	balance (d)	يوازن
science class (n)	حصة العلوم	support (ed)	يدعم / يؤيد
planet (n)	كوكب	remind (ed)	يُذكر

Definitions

digital رقمي	using computer technology instead of paper or physical tools ⁽¹⁾ . Technology that uses computers, like smartphones and tablets.	Arabic Meaning ١. الأدوات المادية أو الملموسة ٢. محمول ٣. إعدادات الشاشة ٤. الإضاءة الخافتة ٥. تفاعلية ٦. منصات
e-books الكتب الإلكترونية	books you can read on a screen instead of on paper.	
laptop حاسب محمول	a portable ⁽²⁾ computer.	
night mode الوضع الليلي	a darker screen setting ⁽³⁾ to protect your eyes in low light ⁽⁴⁾ .	
smartboard سبورة ذكية	an interactive ⁽⁵⁾ board used in classrooms for teaching lessons.	
website موقع إلكتروني	a page on the internet that gives information or lets you do things online.	
social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	online platforms ⁽⁶⁾ where people connect and share content.	
screen time وقت استخدام الشاشة	the time you spend using devices like phones or computers.	

Expressions & Prepositions

share (something) with (someone) يشارك (شيئاً) مع (شخص)	Egypt's Vision 2030 for clean رؤية مصر لعام ٢٠٣٠ للنظافة
check my phone اتفق هاتفي	search for = look for يبحث عن
start by + v-ing يبدأ بـ	look at ينظر إلى
on laptop/tablet على اللابتوب / التابلت	twice a week مرتين في الأسبوع
per minute لكل دقيقة	do homework يقوم بالواجب المدرسي
help with يساعد في	for one hour لمدة ساعة
What about you? ماذا عنك؟	take break يأخذ استراحة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
wisely	بحكمة/بطريقة مدروسة	sensibly / smartly		stupidly / carelessly	باهمال/بحماقة
useful	مفيد	helpful		useless	غير مفيد
amazing	رائع	wonderful		terrible	سوء جدًا
interesting	شيق	exciting		boring / dull	ممل
online	متصل (بالإنترنت)	connected		offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
start	يبدأ	begin		end/finish	ينتهي

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
e-	إلكتروني أو مرتبط بالتكنولوجيا	email / ebook
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	digital
-ful	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى صفة	useful
-ly	تحول الفعل إلى حال	wisely
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	information
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	amazing / interesting

Digital life

تشير إلى استخدام التكنولوجيا في جميع الأجزاء الرقمية في الحياة اليومية مثل (الإنترنت، الهواتف الذكية، الاستخدام اليومي...).

Hybrid bus

الحافلة الهجينة (صديقة للبيئة) تعمل بالطاقة المزدوجة الكهرباء والبنزين

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يوضح / يظهر	showed	shown
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
read	يقرأ	read	read
send	يرسل	sent	sent
do/does	يفعل	did	done
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

① Noun as adjective

• noun as adjective

إسم يستخدم ليؤدي وظيفة الصفة:

• يمكن أن يأتي اسم (noun) قبل اسم آخر لكي يصفه أو يخبر نوعه.

(night mode - adventure story - science class)

• لاحظ أن الكلمات الأولى كلها أسماء، لكنها عملت كصفة توضح نوع الاسم الثاني.

Ex. Mr. Ahmed is an English teacher.

② news - information - advice - equipment

• الكلمات السابقة لا تعد و تعامل معاملة المفرد.

(some - much - a piece of)

• يمكن استخدام تعبيرات قبل هذه الكلمات.

Ex. The news is interesting today. are X

③ remind - remember

• remember

• تذكر من تلقاء نفسه من ذاكرته بدون مساعدة من احد.

Ex. I remember my birthday.

• remind

• يذكر شخصاً آخر بشيء نسيه أو قد ينساه.

Remind (شخص) to do (شيء)

Ex. Please, remind me to take my keys.

④ Digital tool / Digital device

• Digital device . الأجهزة الرقمية (حاسوب / ساعة ذكية)، الشيء الملموس (الجهاز نفسه).

• Digital tool . الأدوات الرقمية، الشيء المستخدم داخل الجهاز (البرنامج - التطبيق).

Ex. I use my tablet (device) with Zoom (tool) to talk to my friends online.

⑤ Habit / Custom / Habitat:

• Habit

• عادة فردية غالباً تخص شخص يقوم بها بانتظام.

Ex. Brushing your teeth is a good habit.

• Custom

• عرف/عادة مجتمعية أو مجموعة من الناس.

Ex. It's a custom to shake hands when meeting someone.

• Habitat

• موطن طبيعي - المكان الذي يعيش فيه كائن حي.

Ex. Forests are the natural habitat of many animals.

6) Affect / Effect:

• **Affect** (فعل) يؤثر

Ex. Bad weather can **affect** your mood.

• **Effect** (اسم) تأثير - نتيجة

Ex. The medicine had a strong **effect** on him.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I have four messages from my friends.
a. schools b. school c. schools' d. school's
- A lot of information sent to me.
a. are b. were c. is d. have
- My parents always me to take breaks from the screen.
a. remind b. remember c. mind d. kill
- Computers, phones, and tablets are digital
a. tools b. advise c. advice d. devices
- Mr. Ibrahim has a good of reading before bed.
a. habitat b. costume c. habit d. start
- Loud music can your learning.
a. effect b. affect c. inform d. deform



Language

قواعد لغوية

Parts of speech

(أنواع الكلام)

Noun = (n)

Verb = (v)

Adjective = (adj)

1 Noun

- Word that names a person, thing, animal or place.

• (الاسم: كلمة تستخدم للتسمية، وتشمل: إنسان؟ حيوان؟ مكان؟ شيء؟).

person: إنسان Youssef - Mesk - girl - boy etc

thing: شيء car - flag - tree - pen etc

animal: حيوان monkey - tiger - dog - bee etc

place: مكان Cairo - home - school - park etc

2 Verb (V):

- a word that shows an action.

(الفعل: عبارة عن كلمة تدل على حدوث شيء، فعل أو حركة، وتحدد زمن الجملة.)

- **main verb:**

الفعل الرئيسي - يستخدم مع كل أزمنة اللغة المختلفة

- **helping verbs:**

Be	Have	Do
am	have	do
is	has	does
are		
was		
were		

- **modals:**

shall - should - will - would - must - might - can - could.

3 Adjective (adj):

- a word that describes nouns.

(الصفة: عبارة عن كلمة تصف الاسم غالبًا ما تأتي قبله.)

[tall - fast - slow - clever - new - fat]

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wael is my friend. The word "friend" is a(n)

- a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

2. Ola reads a story every week. The word "reads" is a(n)

- a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

3. Eman is a clever cook. The word "clever" is a(n)

- a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

Reading

SB Page (14)

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

"A Day in My Digital Life"



استمع إلى النص

Hi everyone! My name is Tarek, and I want to share my **digital**⁽¹⁾ day with you. I always start **my morning**⁽²⁾ by checking my phone. I usually have three or four messages from my school friends. Sometimes, my cousin from Alexandria sends me **funny pictures**⁽³⁾.

At breakfast, I often use my tablet to search for news. My favorite **app**⁽⁴⁾ shows me interesting facts about **animals**⁽⁵⁾ and space. I never eat without looking at something on my screen – I know it's not a **good habit**⁽⁶⁾!

At school, we sometimes use the **smartboard**⁽⁷⁾ in our science class. Our teacher shows us amazing videos about planets and animals. I love watching them! We also use computers in our computer class twice a week. I'm learning to **type**⁽⁸⁾ faster - I can type 25 words per minute now!

After school, I always do my homework first. I usually search for **information**⁽⁹⁾ on my laptop when I need help with my projects. My favorite **website**⁽¹⁰⁾ has lots of useful information for students.

In the evening, I sometimes play **online games**⁽¹¹⁾ with my friends. We usually play for one hour, then we stop. My parents always remind me to take breaks from the screen.

Before bedtime, I often read ebooks on my tablet. I love **adventure stories**⁽¹²⁾! But I always use the "**night mode**⁽¹³⁾" so the screen doesn't **hurt**⁽¹⁴⁾ my eyes.

I think technology is amazing, but I'm learning to use it **wisely**⁽¹⁵⁾. What about you? How do you use technology in your day?

- ١- رقمي
- ٢- صباحي
- ٣- صور مفضلة
- ٤- تطبيق
- ٥- حيوانات
- ٦- عادة جيدة
- ٧- سبورة ذكية
- ٨- يدخل نضام
- لوحة المفاتيح
- ٩- معلومات
- ١٠- موقع إلكتروني
- ١١- ألعاب متصلة
- بالإنترنت
- ١٢- قصص مغامرات
- ١٣- الوضع الليلي
- ١٤- يؤذي/ يؤلم
- ١٥- بحكمة



Lesson 2 page 16 Exercise 2

Hi, I'm Ayman, a 13-year-old student. I love my **digital life**⁽¹⁾! Every day, I spend about three hours on my **smartphone**⁽²⁾. I use social media to **chat**⁽³⁾ with my friends and watch funny videos on the internet. It is fun but sometimes I spend too much time online. My mom says I need to **reduce**⁽⁴⁾ my screen time because it affects my sleep. She's right. Sometimes I feel tired in the morning, I also use my tablet for homework, like researching for projects. Digital devices are great, but I think we need to **balance**⁽⁵⁾ them with **outdoor activities**⁽⁶⁾.

١. حياة رقمية
٢. هاتف ذكي
٣. يردش
٤. يقلل
٥. يوازن
٦. أنشطة خارجية



Lesson 2 page 16 Exercise 4

Egypt **has launched**⁽¹⁾ its first **hybrid bus**⁽²⁾ in Aswan. It runs on both electricity and **diesel**⁽³⁾, helping reduce pollution and protect the environment. The bus was made by an Egyptian company and includes modern technology like smart **navigation**⁽⁴⁾ and quiet engines. It supports Egypt's **Vision**⁽⁵⁾ 2030 for clean, smart cities. Most parts of the bus are made locally, creating jobs. This bus is just the start of Egypt's journey to **greener**⁽⁶⁾, smarter **transport**⁽⁷⁾.

١. أطلقت
٢. أتوبيس هجين
٣. سولار
٤. ملاحة
٥. رؤية
٦. أكثر صداقة
- للبيئة
٧. مواصلات

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialog:

Two friends are talking about technology.

Jana : Do you use technology in your school life?

Malak : Yes, of course.

Jana : How do you use technology at school?

Malak : We use ① and smartboards in class.

Jana : What are the two things you do with your tablet?

Malak : I search for news and read ②

Jana : What's your worst technology ③?

Malak : I sometimes check Tik Tok during meals.

Jana : Do you think you can live without using digital devices?

Malak : ④, I don't think so.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I always use the "....." so the screen doesn't hurt my eyes.
a. night moon b. night mode c. night calm d. night owl
2. My favorite has lots of useful information for students.
a. website b. car c. park d. pavement
3. Before bed time, I often read on my tablet.
a. d-books b. notebooks c. e-books d. c-books
4. We use devices like tablets and smart boards at school.
a. digital b. heavy c. old d. ancient

SB

SB

SB

5. The teacher writes on the _____ and shows us videos in class.
a. door b. smartboard c. wall d. window
6. At breakfast, I often use my phone to _____ for news.
a. search b. take c. walk d. kill
7. Too much _____ can hurt your eyes and make you tired.
a. bedtime b. spare time c. free time d. screen time
8. Some students spend many hours on _____ like Facebook instead of studying.
a. online games b. school websites c. social media d. TV news.
9. Modern _____ helps students learn better and faster in schools.
a. technology b. food c. games d. clothes
10. You can download a learning _____ to help you study English on your phone.
a. pen b. app c. book d. paper
11. You should use your phone _____ so you don't waste your time.
a. wisely b. loudly c. widely d. badly
12. A _____ uses electricity and fuel to help protect the environment.
a. sports car b. train c. hybrid bus d. bicycle
13. Ayman's mom says screen time _____ his sleep.
a. effects b. kills c. eats d. affects
14. The prefix "e-" in the word "e-book" means _____.
a. electric b. electrical c. electronic d. electricity

Definitions

15. _____ means using computer technology instead of paper or physical tools.
a. Traditional b. Historical c. Electrical d. Digital
16. A _____ is an interactive board used in classrooms for teaching lessons.
a. paper b. wall c. blackboard d. smartboard
17. A _____ is a portable computer.
a. laptop b. tip top c. smart phone d. screen

Expressions and prepositions

18. It's important to _____ breaks when you study for a long time.
a. make b. do c. take d. eat
19. Mesk spends five hours _____ her phone every day.
a. to b. on c. about d. for



Language

قواعد لغوية

Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو الأفعال المتكررة.

Ex. The sun **rises** in the east. \ They **go** to school at 7 am.

Form التكوين

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + I / We / You / They

تكملة + He / She / It + verb + s / es / ies

Ex. They **go** to Alexandria once a year.

Ex. She **wears** glasses.

Negative النفي

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + don't + I / We / You / They

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + doesn't + He / She / It

Ex. The train **doesn't leave** at this platform.

Ex. They **don't go** to school on foot.

- يمكن أن نستخدم **never** في النفي مع بقاء الفعل مضافاً إليه (s / es / ies) مع (He / She / It)

Yes \ No question السؤال

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + Do + I / we / you / they

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + Does + he / she / it

Ex. Do they **visit** the museum once a year? - **Yes**, they **do**. No, they **don't**.

Ex. Does she **get up** early? - **Yes**, she **does**. No, she **doesn't**.

Wh question

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + Wh + do + I / we / you / they

تكملة + inf....? + مصدر الفعل + Wh + does + he / she / it

Ex. Where **do** they **go** every day in the morning?

Ex. What **does** she **wear** to protect her eyes?

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار لنوضح متى وكم مرة قام الشخص بفعل شيء.
- تنقسم ظروف التكرار إلى ظروف محددة (Definite) أي أنها تحدد عدد مرات حدوث الفعل ... مثل: **once / twice** وهناك ظروف غير محددة (Indefinite) وهي لا تحدد عدد المرات ولكن توضح نسبة حدوث الفعل من:

Always (100%) $\xrightarrow{\text{إلى}}$ Never (0%)

Indefinite	غير محدد	Definite	محددة
always	دائما	once	مرة
usually	عادة	twice	مرتين
often	غالبا	three times	ثلاث مرات
sometimes	أحيانا	every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع
rarely	نادرا		
never	أبدا		

always (100%) $\rightarrow$ usually (80%) $\rightarrow$ often (70%) $\rightarrow$ sometimes (50%) $\rightarrow$ occasionally (30%) $\rightarrow$ hardly ever/rarely (10%) $\rightarrow$ never (0%)

100%	always	I always looked after my little sister. اعتنيت دائما بأختي الصغيرة (فعلت ذلك دائما).
90%	usually	I am usually tired in the evening. كنت عادة أشعر بالتعب في المساء. (في أوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70%	often	I didn't often watch television. كنت غالبا أشاهد التلفاز. (في أغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	I sometimes get up early in the summer vacation. كنت أحيانا استيقظ مبكرا في عطلة الصيف (نصف أيام الأسبوع)
30%	occasionally	I occasionally eat junk food. تناولت أكلات سريعة بين الحين والآخر (مرات قليلة)
10%	hardly ever/ rarely	I hardly ever traveled abroad. نادرا ما سافرت للخارج. (نادرا ما حدث ذلك)
0%	never	I never visited the Pyramids. لم أزر الأهرام أبدا (لم أفعل ذلك ولا مرة)

- تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد فعل يكون (verb to be) وقبل الافعال الاخرى

Verb to be → Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency → Other verbs

- He **is usually** lazy but he is active now.
- He **always came** first in the running race.

فعل في المصدر ؟ + inf. + فاعل + did + How often/ How many times

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة عن سؤال (How often? / How many times?)

- **How often** do you leave your town?
- Not often. I **usually** stayed in my town in the summer vacation

- لاحظ في النفي نضع (don't / doesn't) قبل ظروف التكرار

- The kids don't **usually** go to bed early.
- **[Seldom - never - hardly ever - rarely]** ظروف تكرار تحمل معنى النفي لذلك لا يأتي في جملة منفية أبداً.

- The weather isn't never sunny. X
- The weather is never sunny. ✓

يمكن استخدام ظروف التكرار (بعد الفاعل في حالة السؤال) و في الإجابة المختصرة.

- Do you always eat here?

تستخدم (ever) بدلاً من (never) في السؤال.

- Do they ever pay on time?

بعض من ظروف التكرار [**usually - sometimes**] يمكن أن تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

- Sometimes, we go fishing. ✓
- We sometimes go fishing. ✓
- We go fishing sometimes. ✓

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. A: How often do you use the computer in your school? B: I the computer in my science class.

- a. use sometimes
- b. used sometimes
- c. sometimes use
- d. sometime used

2. He his tablet for homework.
 a. use sometimes b. sometimes uses
 c. uses sometimes d. sometimes
3. I check my emails in the morning. I do that 100% of the time.
 a. often b. ever c. never d. always
4. Ali late for school.
 a. is never b. never is c. am never d. never am
5. I eat without looking at my screen - I know it's not a good habit!
 a. always b. never c. usually d. ever
6. We use computers in our computer class a week.
 a. two b. twice c. second d. one
7., my cousin sends me funny pictures.
 a. Never b. Always c. Sometimes d. Rarely

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. What technology do you use ?
 a. every day b. everyday c. dairy d. day
9. Ali in Cairo.
 a. living b. live c. life d. lives
10. We to school by bus every day.
 a. go b. going c. goes d. not go
11. A lion eat grass.
 a. never b. don't c. doesn't d. aren't
12. When does she ?
 a. arrives b. arrive c. will arrive d. arrived
13. Mesk fails during her school years; she always gets full marks.
 a. ever b. usually c. always d. never
14. How times do you pray?
 a. often b. many c. much d. every
15. Mr. Ahmed doesn't travel abroad. He leaves Egypt.
 a. doesn't b. ever c. usually d. never
16. A: How do you go swimming? B: Sometimes.
 a. often b. always c. never d. usually.
17. What do use your phone for?
 a. usual you b. she never c. you usually d. usually you

18. I play games on my phone. I like this a lot.
a. never b. don't c. doesn't d. usually
19. I help my mom clean up the kitchen - I do that 50% of the time. 
a. sometimes b. some time c. sometime d. never
20. I do sports. I play football four times a week.
a. never b. often c. always d. ever

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. I (always) watch videos on my phone - I do it about 90% of the time. **SB**
2. I (never) use my tablet to do my homework - I do it about 70% of the time. **SB**
3. I (usually) take my laptop to school - I can't take it. **SB**
4. How (many) do you play football?
5. Ali (always/be) active; his teachers like him.
6. He (goes never) to the library on weekends.
7. Omar (usually doesn't) ride his bike alone.
8. Mrs. Shimaa (doesn't) eats fish; she hates fish.
9. Sama (always is) busy.
10. A: Are you active? B: Yes, I (am always).



Speaking

Ask and answer about daily technology habits.

• السؤال والجواب عن العادات اليومية لاستخدام التكنولوجيا.

Question

What device do you use most?

ما أكثر جهاز تستخدمه؟

When do you usually use it?

متى تستخدمه عادة؟

Why do you use it?

لماذا تستخدمه؟

Could you spend a whole day

without it? هل يمكنك قضاءه كاملاً بدونها؟

Answer

I use my phone most of the time.

أستخدم هاتفي معظم الوقت.

In the evening.

في المساء.

I use it to watch videos.

أستخدمه لمشاهدة الفيديوهات.

No, I don't think so.

لا أظن ذلك.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

A teacher is asking a student about technology habits.

Mr. Ahmed : What device do you use most at school?

Aya : I use my ① the most.

Mr. Ahmed : ② do you use it?

Aya : During and after class to do school projects.

Mr. Ahmed : Could you spend a whole day ③ it?

Aya : Honestly, no. It's important for my studies.

Mr. Ahmed : That's good; but remember to take ④ and use it wisely.

Aya : Yes, I will. Thank you, Sir.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

affect - effect - hurt - mode - screen

Many people today have unhealthy digital habits. They spend too much ① time on their phones, even before sleeping. Using the phone at night can ② your sleep and health. It's better to avoid looking at the screens directly - use the night ③ So the screen doesn't ④ your eyes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Before sleeping, I turn on the on my phone.

- a. loud sound b. airplane c. night mode d. camera

2. Many children spend hours on to chat and share photos.

- a. social media b. newspapers c. radio d. science books

3. Some students prefer to read instead of paper books.

- a. paper b. cartoons c. poems d. e-books

4. You can find a lot of information on different

- a. stores b. websites c. parks d. holidays

5. In the 21st century, most schools are using learning devices and tools.
a. digital b. wooden c. noisy d. ancient
6. I got a from my penfriend.
a. draw b. cook c. massage d. message
7. Brushing your teeth every morning and sleeping early are good
a. clothes b. games c. habits d. foods.
8. I use my to play online games.
a. ruler b. tablet c. bag d. pencil
9. I usually information on the internet for my school project.
a. look after b. search for c. talk to d. play with
10. Please me to bring my tablet to school tomorrow.
a. return b. remember c. remind d. repeat

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman (usual) reads funny stories.
2. A: How often do you visit the zoo? B: (At six)
3. I (never) have a coffee. I have it every day.
4. I (rarely) watch the news. I watch it almost every day.
5. I (never am) late for work.

SB

5 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"My digital habits"

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What is the habit?
- 2- What are your good digital habits?
- 3- What are your bad digital habits?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- A habit is a thing which people do
- Avoid using your phone before sleeping.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

digital tool	أداة رقمية	microphone (n)	ميكروفون/مكبر صوت
digital device	جهاز رقمي	smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية
keyboard (n)	لوحة مفاتيح	printer (n)	طابعة
speaker (n)	سماعات	glowing (adj)	متوهج
headphone (n)	سماعة رأس	mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر
challenge (n)	تحدي	cheerful (adj)	مبتهج/مرح
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	curious (adj)	فضولي
webcam	كاميرا ويب	collaborate (v) (d)	يتعاون
mysteries (n)	الغاز		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

announcement (n)	إعلان	shy (adj)	خجول
notice board (n)	لافتة	nervous (adj)	متوتر/قلق
magic classroom	فصل دراسي سحري	helpful (adj)	مفيد
magical clues	أدلة سحرية	exciting (adj)	مثير
floating puzzles	ألغاز عائمة/طافية	excited (adj)	متحمس
shining books	كتب لامعة	eager (adj)	متشوق/متحمس/متلهف
board game	لعبة لوحية	glowing door	باب متوهج - باب مضيء
task (n)	مهمة	locked box	صندوق مغلق (بقفل)
schoolwork (n)	واجب مدرسي	bright light	ضوء ساطع/قوي
assignment (n)	واجب/تكليف	clicked open	انفتح محدثاً صوت نقرة
workbook (n)	كتاب تدريبات	achieve (v) (d)	ينجز/يحقق
worker (n)	عامل	click (v) (ed)	يضغط/ينقر
video call	مكالمة فيديو	record (v) (ed)	يسجل
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي	solve (v) (d)	يحل
online (adv)	عبر الإنترنت	enter (v) (ed)	يدخل
super (adj)	جدا/فائق/للاغاية	succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
carefully (adv)	بحذر/بعناية		

print (v) (ed)	يطبع	encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
discover (v) (ed)	يكتشف	appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
unlock (v) (ed)	يفتح [القفل] - يكتشف سر		



Definitions

cheerful	مبهج/بشوش	happy and positive ⁽¹⁾ person.
curious	فضولي	feeling interested ⁽²⁾ in learning and knowing.
challenge	تحدي	Something that is difficult and tests someone's ability ⁽³⁾ to compete ⁽⁴⁾ .
collaborate	يتعاون	To work with another person or a group of people.

Arabic Meaning

١. إيجابي
٢. مهتم بـ
٣. قدرة
٤. يتنافس

Expressions & Prepositions

achieve a task	ينجز مهمة	on the wall	على الحائط
work together	يعمل معًا	move around	يتنقل/يتحرك في (الشاشة)
(Be) used for + V-ing	تستخدم من أجل	click on	ينقر على
make a video call	يجري مكالمة فيديو	using = by using	بواسطة/باستخدام
record a presentation	يسجل عرضًا تقديميًا	at the end of	في نهاية
make an announcement	يعمل إعلان	ready for	مستعد لـ
work as a team	يعمل كفريق	filled with	ممتلئ بـ
help each other	يساعد بعضهم البعض	walk through	يسير عبر
		eager to	راغب في



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل
helpful	مفيد	useful	مفيد	useless	الفائدة عديم
cheerful	مسرور/مبهج/مشرق	happy/joyful	سعيد	sad	حزين
shy	خجول	timid	خجول	confident	واثق
glowing	مضيء	bright	ساطع	colourless	عديم اللون
nervous	متوتر	anxious	قلق	calm	هادئ
eager	متحمس	excited	متحمس	uninterested	غير مهتم
encourage	يشجع	support	دعم	discourage	يثبط

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
micro-	صغير = small	microphone
un-	تعطي العكس	unlock
-ful	تحول الاسم/الفعل الى صفة	cheerful
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	carefully
-ing	تحول الفعل الى صفة	exciting
-ed	تحول الفعل الى صفة	excited
-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم	printer

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make	يصنع/يجري	made	made
write	يكتب	wrote	written
find	يجد	found	found
read	يقرأ	read	read
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
come	يأتي	came	come

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 magic and magical

• magic as a noun

السحر: استخدام قوى خارقة أو غير طبيعية لتحقيق أشياء غير عادية، غالباً في القصص و الأفلام.

Ex. The magician performed amazing **magic**.

• Magic as an adjective

السحر: تستخدم لوصف أشياء مرتبطة بممارسة السحر الحقيقي مثل أدوات السحر.

a magic wand = a magic mat.

Ex. Moaz has **magic** wand that can open any door.

• Magical as an adjective

ساحر أو رائع بطريقة جذابة - لوصف الأشياء اللحظات التي تبهر جميلة.

= fantastic = beautiful

Ex. The view was **magical** = fantastic = beautiful.

2) Mouse

• mouse: (Pl- mice)

فأر (حيوان)

Ex. The cat has caught a mouse.

• mouse: (Pl- mice or mice)

فأر (الكمبيوتر)

Ex. I prefer a wireless mouse.

3) Read

Ex. I read a book every night.

يقرأ - متعدى يحتاج مفعول.

Ex. A message read "only those who collaborate."

يقول يشير إلى.

4) tiring- tired / amazing - amazed - exciting - excited

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف شعور من لديه الصفة

Ex. Mr Ahmed is tired so he will go home.

هنا / أحمد يشعر بالتعب

Ex. The world is amazed by Mo Salah's goals.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف المسبب للصفة

Ex. Watching much TV is tiring for your eyes.

هنا نصف مشاهدة التلفاز بأنها مجهددة للعين

Ex. Traveling around the world is amazing.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

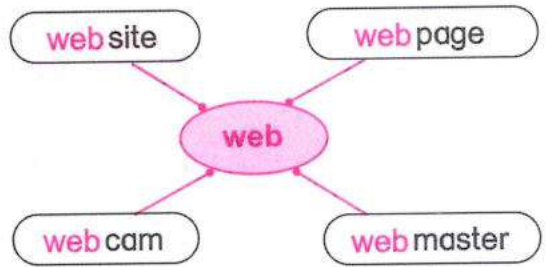
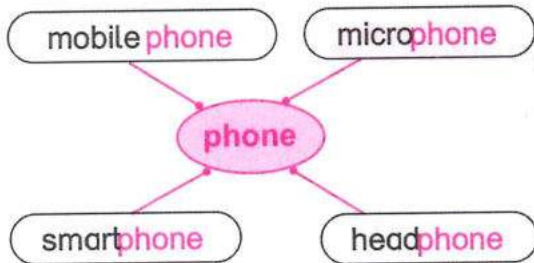
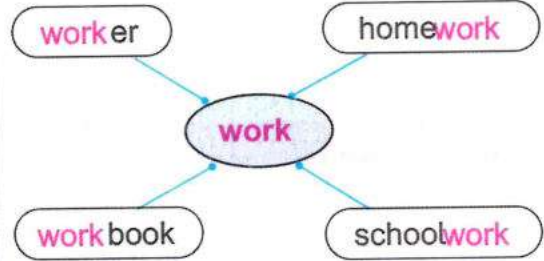
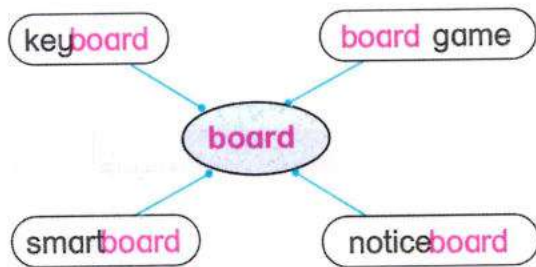
- The magician used his power to turn the princess into a frog.
a. golden b. magic c. magical d. loud
- I saw a mouse in the garden. The plural of the word "mouse" here is
a. mice b. mouses c. a and b d. . moose
- The sign "keep left"
a. write b. read c. reading d. rode
- This job is really I can't do it anymore.
a. tired b. amazed c. tiring d. interested

Word-building Skills

مهارات بناء الكلمات

Word families

• **عائلات الكلمات** تساعد الطلاب على توسيع المفردات؛ كل كلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية تقريباً تنتمي إلى عائلة، وهي مجموعة من الكلمات تتشارك في الجذر (الأصل) نفسه (**Root Word**)، ولكنها تختلف في الصيغة حسب الاستخدام (اسم - صفة - فعل ... إلخ).



Reading

SB Page (18)

Read the email and answer the question.
How many digital devices does Joury use?

استمع إلى النص



New Message

To : Talia@moe.com Cc Bcc

From : Joury@moe.com

Subject : Digital Devices

Hi Talia,

How are you? Today I want to tell you about the **digital devices**⁽¹⁾ I use every day to achieve my tasks.

First, I always do my **homework**⁽²⁾ on the computer. I use the keyboard to write my **assignments**⁽³⁾. It is used for writing and typing. I also use the mouse to move around the screen and **click on**⁽⁴⁾ things.

When I watch videos or **listen to music**⁽⁵⁾, I use my headphones or speakers. If I want to make a video call with my friends online, I use the webcam.

Sometimes, I have to **record**⁽⁶⁾ a presentation for class; that's when I use the microphone. At school, my teacher uses a smartboard to show us pictures, videos, and **notes**⁽⁷⁾.

At the end of the day, I print my homework using the **printer**⁽⁸⁾. It's **super**⁽⁹⁾ helpful! Write soon and tell me about the digital devices you use.

Love,
Joury

Send

١. أجهزة رقمية
٢. واجب منزلي
٣. تكليفات
٤. ينقر على
٥. يستمع إلى
٦. يسجل
٧. ملاحظات
٨. طباعة
٩. للغاية

Story Time

The Magic Classroom

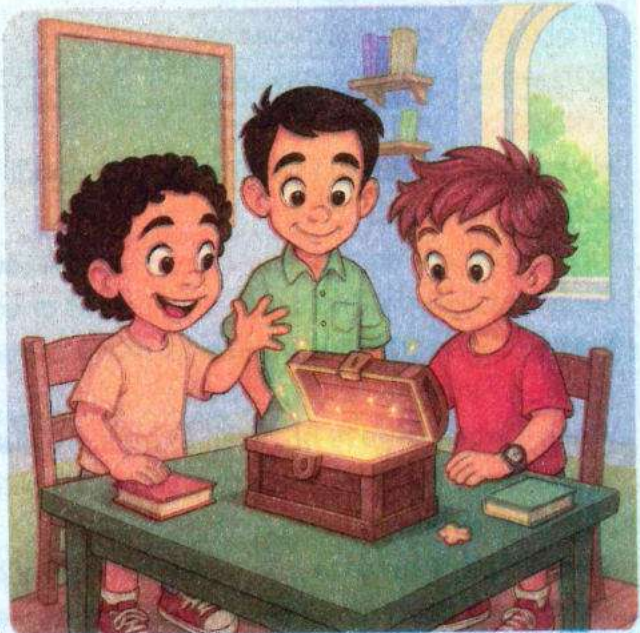
Chapter One

The First Challenge



Before you read, discuss in pairs

In a cheerful village school, the children loved discovering **new things**⁽¹⁾. One day, their teacher, Mr. Adam, made an exciting **announcement**⁽²⁾. "Next week, we will enter the Magic Classroom," he said. "To succeed, you need to show **responsibility**⁽³⁾ and work together." The children were **curious**⁽⁴⁾ and excited. When the day came, they walked through a **glowing**⁽⁵⁾ door and found themselves in a room filled with floating puzzles, shining books, and magical clues. On the wall, a message **read**⁽⁶⁾: "Only those who **collaborate**⁽⁷⁾ and stay curious can unlock the mysteries."



Sara, who was always **eager to**⁽⁸⁾ learn, said, "Let's think carefully and help each other." Omar, who sometimes felt shy, looked nervous. Zain, calm and kind, **encouraged**⁽⁹⁾ him, "We'll do it together."

Their first **challenge**⁽¹⁰⁾ was a locked box. They shared ideas and solved the challenge by working as a team. As the box clicked open, a bright light appeared, and a new challenge was waiting. They smiled, **ready for**⁽¹¹⁾ whatever came next.

١. أشياء جديدة
٢. إعلان
٣. مسؤولية
٤. فضولي
٥. مضىء
٦. يقول
٧. يتعاون
٨. شغوف
٩. يشجع
١٠. تحد
١١. مستعد لـ

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

1. Omar felt _____ at the beginning.
 a. sad b. nervous c. excited d. happy
2. Who made the announcement?
 a. Sara b. Omar c. Zain d. Mr. Adam
3. How did the children manage to solve the first challenge?
 a. They fought together b. They shared ideas
 c. They helped other teams d. They made a map
4. The children felt _____ after they opened the box.
 a. angry b. scared c. happy d. worried

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Which tool is used to make video calls? SB
 a. printer b. mouse c. smartboard d. webcam
2. I print my homework using the _____. SB
 a. printer b. mouse c. smartboard d. webcam.
3. I use the _____ to move around the screen. SB
 a. printer b. mouse c. smartboard d. webcam.
4. The children were _____ and excited. They wanted to know everything. SB
 a. lazy b. curious c. shy d. bad
5. I use the _____ to write my assignments. SB
 a. printer b. speaker c. screen d. keyboard
6. We can hear music from the _____. SB
 a. printer b. mouse c. speaker d. screen
7. I wear _____ to listen to music without noise.
 a. microphone b. webcam c. headphones d. screen
8. Mr. Ahmed uses a _____ so everyone can hear clearly.
 a. microphone b. mouse c. webcam d. camera

Unit 1 Life in a Digital World

9. Our teacher writes on the _____ to show us the lesson.
a. headphone b. speaker c. smartboard d. printer
10. Unlocking the mysteries was a big _____ for us.
a. challenge b. keyboard c. mouse d. speaker
11. It's your _____ to do your homework every day.
a. electricity b. responsibility c. website d. bag
12. The classroom is colourful and bright. It's a very _____ place.
a. careful b. digital c. useful d. cheerful
13. In teamwork, we need to _____ to finish the task.
a. discourage b. complain c. collaborate d. lose

Vocabulary

14. The teacher made an important _____ about the exam.
a. question b. announcement c. song d. food
15. My sister loves solving _____ in her free time.
a. puzzles b. apples
c. announcements d. windows
16. The children found some magical _____ in the book to help them solve the mystery.
a. books b. bags c. clues d. chairs
17. I can't solve the _____ because they are so difficult.
a. mysteries b. pictures c. songs d. games.
18. The synonym of the word "nervous" is _____.
a. calm b. kind c. bad d. anxious
19. The prefix "micro-" in the word "microphone" means _____.
a. large b. big c. small d. sad

Definitions

20. A _____ person is a happy and positive person.
a. polite b. cheerful c. sad d. bad
21. A _____ is something that is difficult and tests someone's ability to compete.
a. challenge b. chip c. chair d. cheap

Expressions and prepositions

22. I use my tablet to _____ a video call with my teacher during online classes.
a. draw b. make c. do d. play

23. The box was old books and papers.

- a. talked about b. played with c. filled with d. made from

General Exercises



on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about digital devices

Ali : Hi Omar!

Omar : Hi Ali! what are you doing?

Ali : I am setting up my computer. I use many digital devices.

Omar: Really? like what?

Ali : I use a keyboard to ①, and a mouse to move objects on the screen.

Omar : Oh, I use a ② to listen to music.

Ali : Nice! Do you have a ③?

Omar : Yes! I use it when I have an online class.

Ali : Great! Digital devices help use achieve our ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

puzzles - alone - together - glowing - challenge

The children entered a magical classroom. A ① door appeared on the wall. To move forward, they had to solve ② and face mysteries. Each ③ was harder than the one before. They worked ④ to finish the challenge.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need a to print my homework.

- a. speaker b. printer c. mouse d. keyboard.

2. We can use a to move the pointer on the screen.

- a. printer b. speaker c. webcam d. mouse

3. We use a to see people during a video call.

- a. pen b. mouse c. webcam d. speaker

4. Mona is very She always asks a lot of questions.

- a. curious b. lazy c. angry d. noisy

Unit 1 Life in a Digital World

5. My teacher is very She always smiles and makes us happy.
a. cheerful b. serious c. tired d. lazy
6. I gave a short about animals in front of the class.
a. message b. presentation c. invitation d. conversation
7. I finished all my school before playing video games.
a. games b. pens c. desks d. tasks
8. They were very to join the new adventure.
a. bored b. lazy c. eager d. tired
9. I finished my science last night.
a. celebration b. invitation c. assignment d. invention



Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Digital tools"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- Name some digital tools.
- 2- Do digital tools help you?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- a printer to print.....
- a speaker to listen



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

phone (n)	هاتف	e-book (n)	كتاب إلكتروني
message (n)	رسالة	online (adj)	عبر الإنترنت
tablet (n)	تابليت	digital (adj)	رقمي
smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية	search (v) (ed)	يبحث عن
website (n)	موقع إلكتروني		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

screen (n)	شاشة	latest (adj)	أحدث
camera (n)	كاميرا	boring (adj)	ممل
tool (n)	أداة	reading (n)	القراءة
news (n)	أخبار	online games	ألعاب الإنترنت
ICT class	حصة تكنولوجيا المعلومات	check (v) (ed)	يتفحص
information (n)	معلومات	reply (v) (ied)	يرد
daily routine	الروتين اليومي	trust (v) (ed)	يثق
while (conj)	أثناء / في خلال		

ICT: Is the abbreviation for Information and Communication Technology.

Expressions & Prepositions

get up	ينهض	search for	يبحث عن
reply to	يرد على	go online	يدخل على الإنترنت
in the evening	في المساء	take... from	ياخذ من
write back	اكتب ردا	on tablet	على التابلت
have breakfast	يتناول الإفطار	better than	أفضل من



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
boring	ممل	dull		interesting	شيق
reply	يرد	answer		ignore	يتجاهل
latest	أحدث	newest		outdated	غير مُحدث
trust	يثق	depend on		distrust	يشك في

Unit 1 Life in a Digital World

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	inform ^{ation}
-ing	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	read ^{ing}

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
get	يحصل	got	got
tell	يخبر	told	told
go	يذهب	went	gone
write	يكتب	wrote	written



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) Habit / Daily routine:

• Habit

عادة (سلوك متكرر يحدث بشكل تلقائي غالباً بسبب تكرار شيء. مثل: قضم الاظافر او شرب القهوة بعد الاستيقاظ .

Ex. I have a **habit** of brushing my teeth before bed.

• Daily routine

مجموعة من الأنشطة المرتب لها تحدث بشكل منتظم.

Ex. My **daily routine** is walking up, having breakfast, and going to school.

2) Search / Research:

• Search

يبحث عن شيء سريعاً مثل (مفاتيح) تستخدم غالباً في الانترنت.

Ex. I'm **searching for** my keys.

- يأتي بعدها حرف جر (for)

• Research

يبحث عن شيء علمي بشكل دقيق وعميق لاكتشاف حقائق جديدة.

Ex. She is **researching** new ways to treat diseases.

- لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر (for)

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Making coffee, brushing my teeth and then getting dressed are part of my _____ routine.

a. habit

b. habitat

c. daily

d. dairy

2. They are still _____ for the lost child.

a. riding

b. killing

c. researching

d. searching

Reading

SB Page (22)

استمع إلى النص



New Message

To : ayman@moe.com Cc Bcc
 From : ahmed@moe.com
 Subject : My Digital Day

Hi Ayman,

How are you? I want to tell you about my digital day. When I get up, I always check my phone. I read messages from my friends and reply to them. Then, I have breakfast while I use my tablet to search for the latest news. At school, teachers usually use a smartboard to help us learn well. We always use computers in the ICT class. After school, I often go online searching for the information for my homework. I always take information from the websites I trust. In the evening, I sometimes play online games with my friends. I never read ebooks on my tablet. I think they are boring. My mother always says, "Reading is better than playing online games." What about you? Write back and tell me about your digital day.

Yours,

Ahmed

Send



Writing Skills

Hints to write an e-mail

1- Start your email with: Hi [friend's name]

Ex. Hi, Ahmed

١- أبدأ البريد الإلكتروني بعبارة مثل:

2- Say why you are writing:

Ex. I am writing to tell you about my weekend.

٢- أكتب سبب مراسلتك:

3- Use short and simple sentences:

Ex. It was fun. I went to the park.

٣- استخدم جمل قصيرة وبسيطة:

4- Finish your email with a closing sentence:

Ex. Write back soon! / Talk to you later.

٤- اختتم الإيميل بجملته ختامية مثل:

Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

1- Capital letters:

تستخدم (Capital letters) في الحالات التالية:

١- أول حرف من الجملة والسؤال.

- The sun rises in the morning.

- Do you speak English?

٢- أسماء العلم وتشمل على [الأشخاص - البلدان - المدن - القارات - الأيام - الشهور].

- Maha - Aswan - Egypt - Africa - Cairo Tower

٣- أيام الاسبوع وشهور السنة والاجازات الرسمية والأعياد.

- Monday - January - Christmas

- spring, not Spring

لكن فصول السنة لا يستخدم في بدايتها حرف (Capital).

٤- اللغات والجنسيات.

- Spanish - Egyptian - English - Arabic

٥- الضمير (I) يُكتب حرف كبير، سواء كان في أول أو وسط أو نهاية الجملة:

- Rana and I love to read books.

- I play football every day.

٦- أول حرف داخل علامات التنصيص مع الاقتباسات:

- He said, "We're going to the park."

• Practice

1. i went to alexandria last june

2. my friend ahmed lives on nahas street.

3. she said, "i love to visit london in spring."

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

interesting - website - e-books - online - boring

After school, I often go online searching for information for my homework. I always take it from the ① I trust. I sometimes play ② games with my friends. I never read ③ on my tablet. I think it is ④

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key words

1. I read from my friends and reply to them.

a. messages

b. massage

c. passages

d. books

2. I use a camera to take pictures.

a. wooden

b. paper

c. digital

d. wall

SB

3. The teacher uses a _____ to display lessons in the class.
 a. desk b. smartboard c. notebook d. table
4. I visit a _____ to find information online.
 a. TV b. camera c. phone d. website
5. I can attend classes _____ using the internet.
 a. line b. linen c. online d. offline
6. Which do you prefer printed books or _____?
 a. notes b. lessons c. words d. e-books
7. Can someone answer the _____?
 a. bone b. tone c. phone d. camera
8. The synonym of the word 'reply' is _____.
 a. ask b. answer c. question d. eat
9. I use my tablet to search for the _____ news.
 a. latest b. least c. late d. later
10. He said the car was safe but I don't _____ him.
 a. trust b. write c. read d. send

3 Write an email of "80" words about "Your daily routine using technology".

Your name is Youssef and your email address is youssef22@moe.com. Your friend is Wael and his email address is wael20@moe.com.

New Message
— / ✕

To
From
Subject

Cc Bcc

Send

|
 |
 |
 |
 |

|

Review on Unit 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

digital (adj)	رقمي	webcam	كاميرا ويب
tablet (n)	جهاز لوحي (تابليت)	mysteries (n)	الغاز
smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية	microphone (n)	ميكروفون/مكبر صوت
laptop (n)	حاسب محمول	smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية
website (n)	موقع إلكتروني	printer (n)	طابعة
e-book (n)	كتاب إلكتروني	glowing (adj)	متوهج
night mode (n)	الوضع الليلي	mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر
night (n)	ليل	cheerful (adj)	مبتهج/مرح
screen time (n)	وقت استخدام الشاشة (الكمبيوتر/الهاتف)	curious (adj)	فضولي
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	collaborate (v) (d)	يتعاون
search (v) (ed)	يبحث عن	phone (n)	هاتف
digital tool	أداة رقمية	message (n)	رسالة
digital device	جهاز رقمي	tablet (n)	تابليت
keyboard (n)	لوحة مفاتيح	website (n)	موقع إلكتروني
speaker (n)	سماعات	e-book (n)	كتاب إلكتروني
headphone (n)	سماعة رأس	online (adj)	عبر الإنترنت
challenge (n)	تحدي	digital (adj)	رقمي
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	search (v) (ed)	يبحث عن



Language

قواعد لغوية

Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو الأفعال المتكررة.

Ex. The sun rises in the east. \ They go to school at 7 am.

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

He / She / It + verb + s / es / ies + كلمة

Ex. They go to Alexandria once a year.

Ex. She wears glasses.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They + don't + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

He / She / It + doesn't + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

Ex. The train doesn't leave at this platform.

Ex. They don't go to school on foot.

- يمكن أن نستخدم **never** في النفي مع بقاء الفعل مضافاً إليه (s / es / ies) مع (He / She / It)**Yes \ No question** السؤال

Do + I / we / you / they + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

Does + he / she / it + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

Ex. Do they visit the museum once a year? - Yes, they do. No, they don't.

Ex. Does she get up early? - Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.

Wh question

Wh + do + I / we / you / they + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

Wh + does + he / she / it + مصدر الفعل + inf....? + كلمة

Ex. Where do they go every day in the morning?

Ex. What does she wear to protect her eyes?

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always → usually → often → sometimes → occasionally → hardly ever/rarely → never
(100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (30%) (10%) (0%)

100%	always	I always looked after my little sister. اعتنيت دائما باختي الصغيرة (فعلت ذلك دائما).
90%	usually	I am usually tired in the evening. كنت عادة اشعر بالتعب في المساء. (في اوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70%	often	I didn't often watch television. كنت غالبا اشاهد التلفاز. (في اغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	I sometimes get up early in the summer vacation. كنت احيانا استيقظ مبكرا في عطلة الصيف (نصف ايام الاسبوع)
30%	occasionally	I occasionally eat junk food. تناولت اكلات سريعة بين الحين والآخر (مرات قليلة)
10%	hardly ever/ rarely	I hardly ever traveled abroad. نادرا ما سافرت للخارج. (نادرا ما حدث ذلك)
0%	never	I never visited the Pyramids. لم ازر الاهرام ابدا (لم افعل ذلك ولا مرة)

- تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد فعل يكون (verb to be) وقبل الافعال الاخرى

Verb to be → Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency → Other verbs

- He **is usually** lazy but he is active now.
- He **always came** first in the running race.

فعل في المصدر ؟ + inf + فاعل + did + How often/ How many times

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للاجابة عن سؤال (How often? / How many times?)

- **How often** do you leave your town?
- Not often. I **usually** stayed in my town in the summer vacation

- لاحظ في النفي نضع (don't / doesn't) قبل ظروف التكرار

- The kids don't **usually** go to bed early.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إلكترونية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Digital habits can be bad or good. Good digital habits include educational apps and taking breaks to rest our eyes. Bad digital habits are spending too much time on games or social media without a break. We should balance our screen time and do other activities. I have a bad digital habit. I always look at screens for a long time.

Lessons 3 & 4

Digital devices are electronic tools we use every day, like smartphones, tablets, and computers. They help us communicate, learn and have fun. Digital devices have made our lives more comfortable because they let us study and work.

Lessons 5 & 6


New Message
— / ✕

To : wael20@moe.com Cc Bcc
From : youssef22@moe.com
Subject : daily routine using technology

Hi Wael!

I am happy to write to you. I want to tell you about daily routine using technology. Every day I use technology in my daily routine. In the morning, I use my phone to check the time and messages. At school, I use my tablet to do my homework and search for information.

Love,
Youssef

Send
🔗
📎
🖼️
📷
🔍
😊
🗑️
⌵

Al-Azhar Test

Digital day is a special day at school. We use computers and tablets in our lessons. The teachers show us new apps and games. We also learn how to use the internet safely.

Test on Unit 1

We should use technology wisely every day. It is important to use the computer for studying and learning new things. We should not spend too much time on games or social media. Always ask an adult before downloading anything. Using technology in a good way helps us learn and stay safe.

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. It's important to a few simple rules.

- a. remind b. remember c. forget d. rare

2. You go online to play video

- a. games b. toys c. times d. names

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara bought a new mobile.

Mona : Congratulations on your new mobile phone!

Sara : ①

Mona : How much is it?

Sara : ②

Mona : ③ ?

Sara : I bought it last week.

Mona : Have a great day!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a device used for making your voice louder.

- a. book b. pen c. microbus d. microphone

2. A is a device that produces sound from a computer.

- a. speaker b. listener c. maker d. worker

3. I often go online for information for my homework.

- a. researching b. searching c. eating d. making

4. We always use computers in the class.

- a. ICT b. PE c. Ph. D. d. TV

5. A camera is a device.

- a. wooden b. paper c. digital d. normal

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Computers are probably the most important modern invention. They are machines which allow anyone to find and store and control electronic information. A computer can do difficult sums very quickly. Computers are important for three main reasons. They are reliable, powerful and can store a lot of information in their memory. Computers are now used in banks, factories and at home. The internet allows people to communicate with anyone around the world in seconds. Most books are now made with the help of computers. Even doctors use computers to help them examine their patients. So, we thank the inventor of this lovely machine.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why are computers important?
- 2- Where can computers can be used?
- 3- Do you think computers are necessary in learning? Why / Why not?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- The underlined word "They" refers to
a. telephones b. machines c. computers d. instructions
- 5- Doctors use computers to their patients.
a. discourage b. examine c. kill d. hate

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (What) often do you play football?
2. The sun (rise) in the morning.
3. Sama (never is) lazy.
4. I visit Aswan (one) a year.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Digital day."

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 1

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. When you are online, you should _____ some rules.
a. feel b. fell c. follow d. fail
2. The internet is very _____.
a. bad b. important c. transport d. boring
3. Keep your password _____.
a. rules b. request c. screen d. secret

2 B- Listen and complete:

1. Don't send _____ to people you don't know.
2. If you have a problem, tell a parent or a _____.
3. Don't make _____ with people you don't know.

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When we entered the room, she greeted us with a _____ smile.
a. cheerful b. terrible c. bad d. sad
2. I always turn on night _____ on my phone before I go to sleep.
a. moon b. mood c. mode d. mean

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

record - webcam - microphone - do - make

When I watch video or listen to music, I use my headphones or speakers. If I want to ① _____ a video call with my friends, I use the ② _____. Sometimes, I have to ③ _____ a presentation for class. That's when I use my ④ _____.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, many children use digital technology every day. They play games on phones, watch videos on tablets, and talk to friends online. These digital habits can be fun, but they also have effects. Some children spend too much time on screens and forget to play outside or read books.

Twenty years ago, children had different habits. They played in the street, rode bikes, and talked face to face. Their free time was more active and social. Now, many children stay indoors and use technology for fun. It is important to balance digital habits with healthy activities. Parents and teachers should help children use technology in a smart way, so they grow up strong, happy, and connected to real life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the main idea of the text?
a. children b. digital c. technology d. tablets
- In the past, children could
a. play games online b. watch videos
c. play in the street d. spend time on screens.

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
.....

- How should teachers help children use technology?
.....

- What does the underlined word "indoors" mean?
.....

- Summarize the text on your own words.
.....

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- I help my younger brother in his homework. I do this all the time.
a. never b. rarely c. ever d. always.
- The sun every day in the morning.
a. rise b. rises c. rose d. is rising.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- How often (do) she on time? 
- I always leave home early so I am (usually) late for school.
- I (sometimes am) sleepy after lunch.
- She (don't) plays in the street.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Laila and her dad are talking about a problem.

Laila : I want to talk to you about something, dad.

Dad : Sure, Laila. What's wrong?

Laila : I was using an app, and it asked for my personal 1

Dad : What did you 2 it?

Laila : I gave it my email and my 3

Dad : Oh no. That sounds dangerous. Did you give it anything else?

Laila : No, but I got scared and 4 the app.

Dad : I am happy you told me. You did the right thing by deleting it.

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How to use technology wisely "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Learning
to learnLearning
to Learn

Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea in texts about learning styles and tools
- Identify specific details about different learning strategies and methods
- Relate reading content to personal experiences with learning

Listening:

- Identify the main idea in audio texts about learning goals and strategies
- Identify specific details about setting and achieving personal learning goals

Speaking:

- Express personal learning styles, habits, and preferences
- Share and reflect on learning experiences in small groups

Language:

- Use "can" accurately to describe learning abilities
- Use present continuous tense correctly

Writing:

- Write short descriptive sentences about personal learning styles and habits
- Write about a learning app, website, or activity



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

map (n.)	خريطة	auditory (adj.)	سمعي
mind map (n.)	خريطة ذهنية	kinesthetic (adj.)	حركي
chart (n.)	مخطط / رسم بياني	successful (adj.)	ناجح
explanation (n.)	شرح	regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
experiment (n.)	تجربة	review (v. ed)	يراجع
technique (n.)	اسلوب	improve (v. d)	يحسّن / يطور
visual (adj./ n.)	شيء مرئي	organize (v. d)	ينظم

Vocabulary



المفردات الاضافية

study space (n.)	مكان الدراسة	schedule (n.)	جدول
method (n.)	طريقة	enjoyable (adj.)	ممتع
energy (n.)	طاقة	neat (adj.)	مرتب / منظم
expression (n.)	تعبير	colourful (adj.)	كثير الالون / زاهى الالوان
topic (n.)	موضوع	physical (adj.)	بدني / جسدي
learning style (n.)	اسلوب التعلم	helpful (adj.)	مفيد / نافع
distractions (n.)	مشتتات الانتباه	individually (adv.)	بشكل فردي
challenges (n.)	تحديات / صعوبات	repeat (v. ed)	يكرر / يعيد
solutions (n.)	حلول	remember (v. ed)	يتذكر
the key (n)	الشيء الهام	memorize (v. d)	يحفظ
passion (n)	شغف	suit (ed)	يلائمه / يناسب
explanation (n)	شرح		



Definitions

visual (adj.) بصري related to sight and seeing.

mind maps (n.) الخرائط الذهنية a visual tool used to organize information.

auditory (adj.) سمعي related to hearing things.

kinesthetic (adj.) حركي	related to hands-on activities and physical action.
organize (v. d) يرتب	to arrange or put things in a particular order or a neat way.
techniques (n.) أساليب	special methods or ways of doing something.
review (v. ed) يراجع	looking at something again to remember it.
improve (v. d) يحسن / يطور	to make something better.
successful (adj.) ناجح	achieving what you wanted to do.
regularly (adv.) بانتظام	doing something often at the same times.

Expressions & Prepositions

sit at the front of	يجلس في مقدمة	do hand-on activities	يقوم بأنشطة عملية
do activities	يقوم بالأنشطة	do experiments	يُجري تجارب
move around	يتنقل / يتحرك	take short breaks	يأخذ فترات راحة قصيرة
say things out loud	يقول الأشياء بصوت مرتفع	(be) related to	مرتبط أو متصل بـ
work in a team	يعمل في فريق	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
focus on	يركز على	avoid distractions	يتجنب مشتتات الانتباه
at a time	في المرة الواحدة	stay focused	يبقى في حالة تركيز
		make a study schedule	يضع جدول للمذاكرة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
improve (v. d)	يحسن	develop	reduce
neat (adj.)	مرتب	organized / tidy	untidy / messy
successful (adj.)	ناجح	productive / effective	unsuccessful / ineffective
challenges (n.)	صعوبات	difficulties / problems	facilities / solutions
technique (n.)	أسلوب	method / approach	-

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ation	تحول الفعل الى اسم	explan ation
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	success ful
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	colour ful
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	distract ion
-able	تحول الفعل الى صفة	enjoy able
-ly	تحول الصفة الى ظرف	regular ly

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
take	ياخذ	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 class: مجموعة من الطلاب يتعلمون معا

- تستخدم كلمة (class) بهذا المعنى كإسم جمعي يمكن أن يليه فعل مفرد أو فعل جمع:

Ex The class **was / were** working on some maths problems.

2 coloured / colourful:

- تستخدم كلمة (coloured) لوصف الأشياء التي تحمل لون غير محدد، ليس أبيض أو سود، بينما تستخدم كلمة (colourful) لوصف الأشياء التي تحمل عدة ألوان متداخلة وبراقة وتسبب إبهارا للمتكلم:

Ex. I bought **coloured** paper for the printer.

Ex. She wore a **colourful** dress with red, green, and yellow flowers.

3 help + (to) inf.

- عند وجود مفعول به بعد الفعل (help)، يمكن استخدام فعل بالمصدر مسبقاً بـ (to) أو بدونها -
الشكلين صحيحين:

Ex. Visuals help students (to) learn better.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Our class a break at 10:30 am.
a. takes b. take c. taking d. a&b
- The parrot has very feathers. It's wonderful!
a. coloured b. colourful c. colour d. colourfully
- My teacher has hair – it's grey!
a. coloured b. colourful c. colour d. colourfully
- The teacher helped the students the difficult question.
a. answer b. to answer c. answers d. a&b

Reading

SB Page (29)

Read the text. What happens when you know how to learn best?

"Different ways people learn"

استمع إلى النص



Every person learns **differently**⁽¹⁾. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are **visual learners**⁽²⁾. They like to read books, look at pictures, and use **colourful notes**⁽³⁾. Visual learners often make **maps**⁽⁴⁾ and **charts**⁽⁵⁾ to **organize information**⁽⁶⁾.

Other people learn best by hearing information. These are **auditory learners**⁽⁷⁾. They like to listen to music while studying, **discuss topics**⁽⁸⁾ with friends, and hear **explanations**⁽⁹⁾ from teachers. Auditory learners often **repeat**⁽¹⁰⁾ information **out loud**⁽¹¹⁾ to **remember**⁽¹²⁾ it.

Some people learn best by moving and touching things. These are kinesthetic learners. They like to **do experiments**⁽¹³⁾, **build models**⁽¹⁴⁾ and **take breaks**⁽¹⁵⁾. **Kinesthetic learners**⁽¹⁶⁾ often use their hands to help them think.

- ١- بشكل مختلف
- ٢- المتعلمون البصريون
- ٣- ملاحظات ملونة
- ٤- خرائط
- ٥- رسوم بيانية
- ٦- يرتب المعلومات
- ٧- المتعلمون السمعيون
- ٨- يناقش موضوعات
- ٩- شروحات
- ١٠- يكرر
- ١١- بصوت مرتفع
- ١٢- يتذكر
- ١٣- يجري تجارب
- ١٤- يبني نماذج
- ١٥- يأخذ فواصل للراحة
- ١٦- المتعلمون الحركيون

Unit 2 Learning to learn

Understanding your learning style helps you study better. When you know how you learn best, you can choose the **right methods**⁽¹⁷⁾ for yourself. This makes learning easier and more **enjoyable**⁽¹⁸⁾.

١٧- الطرق الصحيحة

١٨- ممتع

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- What are the three main learning styles described in the text?

- a. Reading, Writing, Arithmetic.
- b. Visual, Auditory, Kinesthetic.
- c. Fast, Slow, Medium.
- d. Group, Individual, Online.

2- According to the text, what helps visual learners learn best?

- a. Listening to music and discussing topics.
- b. Doing experiments and building models.
- c. Reading books, and using colourful notes.
- d. Taking breaks and moving around.

2- c. Reading books, and using colourful notes.

1- b. Visual, Auditory, Kinesthetic.

Answers:



Lesson 2 page 30 Exercise 2

Learning how to learn is one of the most important skills for students. Every person has a different learning style. Some students learn best by reading. **Others**⁽¹⁾ by listening, and some by doing **activities**⁽²⁾.

The **key**⁽³⁾ is to find your own style that works. Good learners don't just **memorize**⁽⁴⁾ information- they understand it. They ask questions, take **notes**⁽⁵⁾, and **review**⁽⁶⁾ regularly. When studying becomes difficult, good learners take **breaks**⁽⁷⁾ and try different **methods**⁽⁸⁾. The most successful students are those who never stop trying to improve their learning **techniques**⁽⁹⁾.

- ١. آخرون
- ٢. أنشطة
- ٣. الشيء المهم
- ٤. يحفظ
- ٥. مذكرات
- ٦. يراجع
- ٧. فواصل للراحة
- ٨. طرق
- ٩. أساليب



Lesson 2 page 30 Exercise 4

Hi, I'm Ahmed, a **12-year-old**⁽¹⁾ student. I've learned how to study better this year. First, I **organize**⁽²⁾ my notes in **folders**⁽³⁾ so I can find them easily. I also make a **study schedule**⁽⁴⁾ every week. This helps me **focus on**⁽⁵⁾ one subject **at a time**⁽⁶⁾. My teacher says good study habits are important for success.

- ١. عمره ١٢ سنة
- ٢. ينظم
- ٣. مجلدات
- ٤. جدول للمذاكرة
- ٥. يركز على
- ٦. في المرة الواحدة

For example, I study in a quiet room and turn off my phone to **avoid distractions**⁽⁷⁾. Sometimes, it is hard to **stay focused**⁽⁸⁾, but I take short breaks to relax. Learning to learn makes schoolwork easier and more enjoyable!

٧. يتجنب المشتتات
٨. يظل مركزاً

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

Answer the following questions:

- 1- How does Ahmed organize his notes?
2. What does Ahmed do to avoid distractions while studying?
3. Why does Ahmed take short breaks?

1. Ahmed organizes his notes in folders.
2. To avoid distractions, Ahmed turns off his phone.
3. Ahmed takes short breaks to relax.

Answers:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I learn best when my study space is _____.
a. physical b. messy c. organized d. boring
2. I learn best when I _____ activities with my hands.
a. do b. make c. have d. forget
3. I _____ better when teachers talk with a lot of energy and passion.
a. forget b. remind c. take d. understand
4. I like to say things out loud to _____ them.
a. dislike b. remember c. remind d. write
5. When I study, I need to take short _____ to move my body.
a. distractions b. breaks c. expressions d. methods
6. Something that's _____ is related to sight and seeing.
a. visual b. auditory c. colourful d. kinesthetic
7. To _____ is to arrange or put things in a particular order or a neat way.
a. learn b. understand c. organize d. succeed

8. To do something is to do it often at the same times.
a. enjoyably b. neatly c. colourfully d. regularly
9. are special methods or ways of doing things.
a. Techniques b. Reviews c. Maps d. Charts

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. A helps you see how different ideas are connected to each other.
a. long list b. simple picture c. mind map d. dark line
11. I understood the lesson well because of the teacher's
a. question b. explanation c. drawing d. game
12. A learner likes to use pictures, diagrams, and colors to understand.
a. quiet b. loud c. visual d. fast
13. A/An learner remembers things well after hearing them spoken.
a. eating b. auditory c. playing d. writing
14. To understand, a/an learner might need to build a model or act something out.
a. kinesthetic b. reading c. watching d. auditory
15. Before the test, it's a good idea to your notes.
a. hide b. review c. throw d. forget
16. To your score on tests, you need to study more.
a. lower b. improve c. keep d. break
17. Children love books with many bright and pictures.
a. black b. plain c. boring d. colourful
18. To get the noun from the verb "explain", we add the suffix at the end.
a. full b. ion c. ation d. ness
19. The teacher uses good techniques for teaching students. "Techniques" is a synonym for
a. methods b. distractions c. visuals d. monuments

Expressions and prepositions

20. When I study, I turn off my phone to avoid
a. helps b. friends c. books d. distractions

21. It's difficult to study while the children are moving in the room.
 a. above b. under c. front d. around
22. We all sang the song at the same time, making loud noises.
 a. on b. at c. of d. with

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

repeat - activities - organizing - suits - around

People learn in different ways. Auditory learners like hearing things. They ① words to remember them. Visual learners need to see things. Colourful pictures and ② help them. Kinesthetic learners like to move ③ They learn best by doing activities. Knowing your style helps you learn better. Try different ways to see what ④ you.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your learning style:

• السؤال والجواب عن أسلوب التعلم.

Question

1- What learning style do you prefer? Why?

ما هو أسلوب التعلم الذي تفضله؟ ولماذا؟

2- What do you like to do while studying?

ماذا تحب ان تفعل أثناء الدراسة؟

3- What do you do to remember information?

ماذا تفعل لكي تتذكر المعلومات؟

4- Do you think it's a successful learning style?

هل تعتقد أن هذا أسلوب تعلم ناجح؟

Answer

- I learn best by hearing information. I'm an auditory learner.

أتعلم بشكل أفضل بسماع المعلومات. فأنا متعلم سمعي.

- I like to discuss topics with friends and hear explanations from teachers.

أحب ان أناقش الموضوعات مع أصدقائي وأستمع للشرح من المعلمين.

- I repeat the information I hear out loud to remember it.

أقوم بترديد المعلومات التي أسمعها بصوت عالي لكي أتذكرها.

- Yes, it suits me very well.

نعم أنه يناسبني جيدا.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

- Ali : Hi Mona! How do you like to study?
- Mona : I like to look at pictures and read books. I'm a ① learner.
- Ali : Oh, that's cool! I think I learn better by listening.
- Mona : Then you are an ② learner!
- Ali : What do kinesthetic learners do?
- Mona : They like to move, do ③ and use their hands.
- Ali : Do you ever make charts or ④ when you study?
- Mona : Yes! They help me remember things better.
- Ali : I want to try that too. Thanks, Mona!
- Mona : You're welcome, Ali! Try different ways and see what works best!



Language

قواعد لغوية

A. Using "can" to express ability:

- يستخدم الفعل الناقص (can) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر للتعبير عن القدرة على القيام بشيء - وهو يساوي في المعنى (be able to):

فعل في المصدر + can + inf. فاعل

Ex. I can learn best when my study space is organized.

Ex. We can remember well when we get enough sleep.

B. Using "can't / cannot" to express inability:

فعل في المصدر + can't + inf. فاعل

- يستخدم الشكل المنفي (can't / cannot) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على القيام بشيء - وهو يساوي في المعنى (be not able to):

Ex. I can't study well when the room is noisy.

Ex. I can't answer this question because it's difficult.

C. The Present Continuous Tense: زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative الاثبات

I	am	} + v.ing
He / She / It	is	
We / You / They	are	

Ex. I'm studying English at the moment.

Ex. He / She is doing the washing up.

Ex. We / They are waiting for the school bus.

Negative النفي

I	am	} + not + v.ing
He / She / It	is	
We / You / They	are	

Ex. I'm not going to the club at the moment.

Ex. The baby isn't sleeping.

Ex. The children are not watching TV right now.

Question السؤال

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + v.ing?

Ex. Are you reading a book?

Yes, I am.

No, I am not.

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث في نفس توقيت الكلام:

Ex. She is sleeping now

Ex. The children are playing in the garden.

Key words & phrases الكلمات والتعبيرات الدالة على المضارع المستمر

now	right now	at the moment	at the present
-----	-----------	---------------	----------------

Check your understanding ✓

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I _____ (revise) my vocabulary notes right now.
- Layla _____ (use) an app to learn words at the moment.
- We _____ (can't) focus better when we have a goal.
- She _____ (can) cross the street without help because she is too old.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She _____ run fast. She has a broken leg.
a. can b. does c. can't d. isn't
- I can _____ with my left hand.
a. writes b. write c. writing d. wrote
- My baby brother _____ talk yet. He is still 3 months old.
a. has b. can c. can't d. isn't
- We _____ swim in the pool today, it's open!
a. can b. can't c. cannot d. cans
- Look! The children _____ in the garden.
a. plays b. play c. played d. are playing
- She can't talk now because she _____ a shower.
a. takes b. is taking c. took d. take
- Please be quiet. The baby _____.
a. sleeps c. slept c. is sleeping d. sleep
- The sun _____ brightly at the moment.
a. shines b. is shining c. shone d. shine
- Look! The cat _____ now.
a. sleeps b. is sleeping c. sleep d. slept
- I _____ my homework right now.
a. do b. did c. does d. am doing
- She _____ a book at this moment.
a. reads b. is reading c. read d. reading
- He _____ his bicycle to school right now.
a. rides b. ride c. rode d. is riding

13. My mom _____ dinner in the kitchen at the moment.
 a. is cooking b. cooks c. cook d. cooked
14. Listen! Someone _____ at the door now.
 a. knocks b. knocked c. is knocking d. knock
15. It _____ outside, so take an umbrella.
 a. rains b. is raining c. rained d. rain

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He _____ (can) lift that box alone. It's too heavy.
 2. Birds _____ (can't) fly high in the sky.
 3. You _____ (can't) learn anything if you try hard.
 4. Fish _____ (can) live out of water.
 5. Listen! The baby _____ (cry) now.
 6. The sun is shining, and birds _____ (sing).
 7. In the photo, the children are _____ (play) football.
 8. They are _____ (have) their dinner at the moment.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What is one tip for a good study environment?
 a. Study with the TV on. b. Find a noisy place.
 c. Find a quiet place. d. Study with friends talking.
2. How often should you take breaks while studying?
 a. Every 10 minutes. b. Every 30-45 minutes.
 c. Only after 2 hours. d. Never take breaks.
3. What is the best way to remember information?
 a. Read everything the night before. b. Study only once a week.
 c. Review your notes regularly. d. Ignore notes and just read the book.

B- Listen and complete:

4. You should _____ your phone while studying.
 5. If you don't understand something, you can ask _____.
 6. Review your _____ regularly.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher made a to show how many students got top marks on the exam.
a. map b. chart c. book d. game
- A good to learn new words is using flashcards.
a. animal b. problem c. mistake d. technique
- Reading books will help you your vocabulary.
a. improve b. forget c. break d. hide
- If you learn best by hearing sounds, you might be an learner.
a. seeing b. touching c. auditory d. writing
- Please your toys so the room looks tidy.
a. organize b. break c. paint d. eat
- Ahmed go to school today because he is ill.
a. doesn't b. can c. can't d. will
- If you revise well before the exam, you get a top mark.
a. can b. don't c. can't d. aren't
- My sister the washing up at the moment. She is busy.
a. does b. did c. will do d. is doing
- The children in the garden now. Please, tell them to come for lunch.
a. played b. are playing c. are played d. plays
- I can't this rock without help. Would you help me?
a. move b. moving c. moved d. move

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

style - successful - explanations - challenges - improve

Learning is not an easy task. Students face many ① at school, but they can learn from them. Listening to teachers' ② helps students understand better. To be ③, students should study daily and ask questions. They can also ④ their work by checking it carefully. Keeping notebooks neat and clean makes it easier to read and find information when studying for tests.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My mother (prepare) dinner right now.
- I (can't) help you with this heavy bag. Let me carry it for you.

3. The children (come) from school at the moment.
4. The cat (sleep) under your bed right now.
5. I (can) wait any longer. It's getting late.

5 Complete the following dialog:

A student is taking to his teacher about the problems he has while studying.

Student : Good morning, Miss. Can I talk to you for a minute?

Teacher : Good morning! Of course. What's the ①

Student : I find it hard to study at home. I get ② easily.

Teacher : I see. Do you have a quiet place to study?

Student : Not really. My little brother always makes noise.

Teacher : Maybe you can use the school library after class. It's quiet there.

Student : That's a good idea. I also don't ③ some lessons.

Teacher : No problem. I can help you during ④ or after school.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your favourite learning style"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What's your favourite learning style?
- 2- When do you learn best?
- 3- What do you use while studying?

- يمكنك إستخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm a/an learner.
- I learn best when
- When I study, I like to use
- I also like to make
- If something is hard, I



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

benefits (n.)	فوائد	perseverance (n.)	مواظبة/مثابرة
solutions (n.)	حلول	unity (n.)	الوحدة/الاتحاد
cooperation (n.)	التعاون	own (adj.)	ملك/خاصته
leadership (n.)	القيادة	hesitated (adj.)	متردد
apps = applications (n.)	تطبيقات	confident (adj.)	واثق من نفسه
digital tools (n.)	الأدوات الرقمية	creative (adj.)	مبدع
experiences (n.)	خبرات/تجارب حياتية	scared (adj.)	خائف/مرعوب
courage (n.)	الشجاعة	develop (v. ed)	يطور/ينمي
respect (n. / v. ed)	احترام - يحترم	communicate (v. d)	يتواصل
ambition (n.)	الطموح	beneath (adv.)	أسفل/تحت

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

team sports (n.)	الرياضات الجماعية	glowing (adj.)	متوهج
teamwork (n.)	العمل الجماعي	required (adj.)	مطلوب
media (n.)	وسائل الإعلام	brave (adj.)	شجاع
message (n.)	مغزى/رسالة	whisper (v. ed)	يهمس
sign (n.)	لافتة/إشارة	achieve (v. d)	ينجز/يحقق
desire (n.)	رغبة	instantly (adv.)	فورا/في الحال
quality (n.)	سمة/خاصية	powerful (adj.)	قوى
group learning (n.)	التعلم الجماعي	invisible (adj.)	غير مرئي
bridge (n.)	جسر/كوبري	pass (ed)	يمر
freely (adv.)	بحرية	quit (ted)	يغادر
magic (adj.)	سحري		

Expressions & Prepositions

communicate with	يتواصل مع	solve problems	يحل المشاكل
care for	يعتني بـ		
never give up	لا تياس أبدا	find solutions	يبحث عن حلول
(be) proud of	فخور بـ	develop skills	يطور أو ينمي المهارات
on the internet	على الانترنت	express himself freely	يعبر عن نفسه بحرية
believe in	يؤمن بـ	make new friends	يكون أصدقاء جدد
step onto	يصعد إلى	do projects	يقوم بعمل مشاريع
speak a word	ينطق كلمة	take a deep breath	ياخذ نفس عميق
share opinions	يشارك الآراء	one another	بعضهم البعض
cheer (sb) on	يشجع (شخصا)		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
benefits (n.)	فوائد	advantages / gains		disadvantages	
courage (n.)	شجاعة	bravery		fear	
perseverance (n.)	مثابرة	determination		hesitation	
instantly (adv.)	فورا	immediately / quickly		gradually / slowly	
brave (adj.)	شجاع	courageous		cowardly	

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	cooperat ion
-ive	تحول الفعل الى صفة	creat ive
-ship	تحول الاسم الى اسم بمعنى اخر	leader ship

Unit 2 Learning to learn

-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم	thinker
-en	تحول الاسم الى صفة	golden
-ance	تحول الفعل الى اسم	perseverance

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة	
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
find	يجد / يبحث عن	found	found
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
speak	يقول / يتحدث	spoke	spoken
hold	يمسك	held	held
sing	يغني	sang	sung

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Common gender nouns: الأسماء التي لا تدل على جنس محدد

- هناك من الأسماء ما لا يدل على جنس محدد (مذكر او مؤنث)، مثل:

a teacher / a child / a student / a baby / a parent / a cousin

- وهذه الأسماء تأتي في صيغة المفرد ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ولكن إذا جاء بعدها ضمير فاعل فإنه يكون إما (he/she) متبوع بفعل مفرد أو (they) متبوع بفعل جمع:

Ex. If a child has a problem during school, he/she gets help from teachers.

Ex. If a child has a problem during school, they get help from teachers.

- وإذا جاء بعدها ضمير ملكية فإنه يكون إما (his / her) أو (their):

Ex. A student must do his/her homework every day.

Ex. A student must do their homework every day.

- وإذا جاء بعدها ضمير مفعول فإنه يكون إما (him / her) أو (them):

Ex. If your cousin asks for help, you should help him/her.

Ex. If your cousin asks for help, you should help them.

2 spend time / a period of time + v -ing:

- عندما يأتي الفعل (spend) متبوعاً بكلمة (time) أو بمدة زمنية، فإنه يليه فعل منتهي بـ (ing):

Ex. Your child **spends** much **time watching** TV.

Ex. I **spend two hours doing** my homework every day.

3 at the end / in the end: في النهاية

- يستخدم التعبيرين بمعنى (في النهاية)، ولكن (at the end) تستخدم للدلالة على المكان أو التوقيت - في نهاية
 - أما (in the end) تستخدم للدلالة على النتيجة أو الخاتمة / في النهاية:

Ex. There's a beautiful garden **at the end of the street**.

Ex. We finally finished the project **at the end of last week**.

- أما (in the end) تستخدم للدلالة على النتيجة أو الخاتمة / في النهاية:

Ex. He studied hard for the exam, and **in the end**, he got a high score.

Ex. I searched for the lost keys, and **in the end**, I found them under the chair.

4 maybe / may be:

• maybe (adv.) ربما / محتمل

- تستخدم كلمة (maybe - كلمة واحدة) كظرف بمعنى (ربما / محتمل) - وتساوي في المعنى كلمة (perhaps) - وتأتي إما في بداية الجملة أو في نهايتها:

Ex. **Maybe** we should go to the park instead of the beach.

Ex. I'll finish the project tonight, **maybe**.

- وتستخدم (may be كلمتان) كفعل بمعنى (ربما يكون) - وتستخدم بعد الفاعل بالجملة:

Ex. She **may be** busy right now.

Ex. The man outside **may be** the new manager.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A child always needs _____ parents' help.
a. his b. her c. their d. them
- A baby should get _____ food regularly.
a. them b. their c. her d. his
- The teacher _____ in the school library.
a. maybe b. can c. might d. may be
- I looked for my pen for so long, and _____ the end, I found it under the desk.
a. in b. at c. of d. to
- My sister spent about an hour _____ the washing up.
a. to do b. did c. does d. doing

Reading

SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النص



Learning in groups has more **benefits**⁽¹⁾ than learning alone. When students learn in large or small groups, they **share opinions**⁽²⁾, **discuss problems**⁽³⁾ and **find solutions**⁽⁴⁾ for them. **Teamwork**⁽⁵⁾ helps students **develop**⁽⁶⁾ their skills and be **confident**⁽⁷⁾. It also helps them know how to **communicate**⁽⁸⁾ with others and understand them. When a student shares their opinion about a **topic**⁽⁹⁾, they learn how to **express themselves**⁽¹⁰⁾ **freely**⁽¹¹⁾ using their own words. Teamwork teaches students **cooperation**⁽¹²⁾ and **leadership**⁽¹³⁾; it also helps them to be **creative thinkers**⁽¹⁴⁾. Learning with others also helps students to **make new friends**⁽¹⁵⁾ because they spend much time with each other doing projects, solving problems and doing experiments.

Modern technology makes group learning very enjoyable. Students can use **apps**⁽¹⁶⁾ and websites on the internet to find information about their work. Using **digital tools**⁽¹⁷⁾ creates **powerful experiences**⁽¹⁸⁾.

- ١- فوائد
- ٢- يشارك الآراء
- ٣- يناقش المشاكل
- ٤- يبحث عن حلول
- ٥- العمل الجماعي
- ٦- يطور
- ٧- واثق من نفسه
- ٨- يتواصل
- ٩- موضوع
- ١٠- يعبر عن نفسه
- ١١- بحرية
- ١٢- التعاون
- ١٣- القيادة
- ١٤- مفكرون مبدعون
- ١٥- يكون أصدقاء جدد
- ١٦- تطبيقات
- ١٧- الأدوات الرقمية
- ١٨- خبرات قوية.

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة بالأسفل)

1. What's the main idea of the text?
 - a. Studying alone is better than working in groups.
 - b. Technology makes school easier.
 - c. Learning with others has many benefits.
 - d. Students should use apps for every lesson.
2. According to the text, how does group learning help students understand better?
 - a. They watch videos together.
 - b. They explain things to each other.
 - c. They use smartphones.
 - d. They take tests together.
3. What life skills does the texts say students can learn from working in a team?
 - a. Reading and writing.
 - b. Cooking and cleaning.
 - c. Cooperation and leadership.
 - d. Drawing and painting.
4. The underlined word "**apps**" most likely means
 - a. tools and devices
 - b. food and drinks
 - c. advertisements
 - d. computer programmes

4- d. computer programmes

3- c. Cooperation and leadership.

2- b. They explain things to each other.

1- c. Learning with others has many benefits.

Answers:

Story Time

The Magic Classroom



Before you read, discuss in pairs

Chapter Two

The Power Of Unity

The power of Unity

The next time the students entered, the Magic⁽¹⁾ Classroom was more difficult. In front of the children was an invisible⁽²⁾ bridge. A glowing sign⁽³⁾ read: "Only those with respect⁽⁴⁾, ambition⁽⁵⁾, and courage⁽⁶⁾ can cross." Sara thought for a moment. "Respect means we listen and care for each other." Zain added, "Ambition means we believe in⁽⁷⁾ our success." Omar took a deep breath⁽⁸⁾, "Courage means we try even when we are scared."

They stepped onto the invisible bridge, holding hands and encouraging one another. Every kind word they spoke and every brave stop⁽⁹⁾ they took made the bridge appear slowly beneath⁽¹⁰⁾ their feet. When Omar hesitated⁽¹¹⁾, his friends cheered him on⁽¹²⁾, reminding him he wasn't alone.

At the end of the bridge, a golden door⁽¹³⁾ appeared with a message:

"Perseverance⁽¹⁴⁾ opens every door. Never give up⁽¹⁵⁾." The team tried many ideas but nothing worked. Hours passed. They refused to quit⁽¹⁶⁾.

Finally, Omar whispered⁽¹⁷⁾, "Let's sing together. Maybe unity⁽¹⁸⁾ is the key." they sang, and slowly, the golden door opened. They clapped and laughed, proud of⁽¹⁹⁾ their teamwork⁽²⁰⁾.



١. سحري
٢. غير مرئي
٣. لافتة متوهجة
٤. الاحترام
٥. الطموح
٦. الشجاعة
٧. يؤمن بـ
٨. نفس عميق
٩. توقف شجاع
١٠. أسفل
١١. تردد
١٢. شجعه
١٣. باب ذهبي
١٤. المثابرة
١٥. لا تياس
١٦. رفض أن يتوقف
١٧. همس
١٨. الاتحاد
١٩. فخور بـ
٢٠. العمل الجماعي

General Exercises



on Lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the _____ of exercise is feeling strong.
a. games b. benefits c. problems d. tools
2. This project requires _____ between students to find information about the topic.
a. laughing b. ambition c. hesitation d. cooperation
3. Mariam uses digital _____ like learning apps to help with homework.
a. tools b. benefits c. teamwork d. perseverance
4. You need _____ to speak in front of the class.
a. food b. sleep c. courage d. paper
5. Ali's _____ is to become a doctor and help people.
a. happiness b. courage c. cooperation d. ambition
6. Even when the exam was hard, she showed _____ and kept trying.
a. sadness b. perseverance c. running d. hesitation
7. The team showed great _____ and worked together to win the match.
a. unity b. anger c. homework d. food
8. He _____ before jumping into the cold pool at first, but finally he did it.
a. cheered b. danced c. hesitated d. achieved
9. After practicing, Sarah felt _____ about her presentation.
a. sleepy b. confident c. hungry d. scared
10. This boy is very _____. He makes wonderful pictures.
a. tired b. late c. lazy d. creative
11. Good _____ helps the group finish the project faster.
a. teamwork b. fighting c. sleeping d. homework
12. The fireman was very _____; he entered the burning house to save the children.
a. brave b. late c. funny d. tall
13. I can't hear you. Please speak louder. Don't _____.
a. shout b. run c. whisper d. sing

14. You can your goals if you work hard every day.

- a. hesitate b. achieve c. leave d. require

15. If you want to succeed in life, never even when you lose.

- a. give up b. sit down c. look for d. cheer on

16. We should poor people.

- a. laugh at b. run from c. sing to d. care for

17. It's good to believe yourself.

- a. from b. in c. at d. on

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

soft - others - teamwork - shares - wins

When people cooperate, they share tasks and help each other. Good ① needs talking and listening. Everyone ② ideas and respects others. If someone has a problem, the team helps. Teamwork makes jobs easier. For example, cleaning streets or playing football needs teamwork. When a team ③, everyone feels happy. Teamwork teaches us to care about ④, not just ourselves.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to Omar about his studying problems

Ali : Hi Omar! I can't focus when I study. I get distracted.

Omar : Hi Ali! ① you study with your phone?

Ali : Yes, I always check messages.

Omar : Try ② your phone or putting it away.

Ali : Good idea. But my room is also ③

Omar : You can wear headphones or study in a quiet place like the library.

Ali : I also get sleepy sometimes.

Omar : Take short ④, drink water, and don't study on your bed.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

improve (v. d)	يحسّن / يطوّر	mistakes (n.)	أخطاء
ideas (n.)	أفكار	performance (n.)	أداء
practice (n. / v. d)	ممارسة / يمارس	learning plan	خطة التعلم
try (v. ied)	يحاول / يجزّب	learning styles	طرق التعلم

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

voice (n.)	صوت	journal (n.)	مذكرة / دفتر يوميات
board (n.)	لوحة / سبورة	creative (adj.)	مبدع
clearly (adv.)	بوضوح	diagram (n.)	رسم بياني / مخطط
pronunciation (n.)	نطق	phrase (n.)	عبارة
anywhere (adv.)	في أي مكان	record (v. ed)	يسجّل
hard (adj.)	صعب	discover (v. ed)	يكتشف
circle (n.)	دائرة	describe (v. d)	يصف
underneath (adv.)	بالأسفل		

Expressions & Prepositions

start with	يبدأ بـ	draw a diagram	يرسم مخطط
make videos	يصنع مقاطع فيديو	it's your turn to	جاء دورك لكي
stick to	يلزم / يتمسك بـ	pass to	يمرّر (شيء) لـ
record his voice	يسجل صوته	create a journal	ينشئ دفتر يوميات
give advice to	يقدم النصيحة لـ	at least	على الأقل
to reach your goal	لكي تصل لهدفك	in English	باللغة الانجليزية
		reflect on	فكر في

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحويل الصفة الى ظرف	clearly
-ive	تحويل الفعل الى صفة	creative
-iation	تحويل الفعل الى اسم	pronunciation

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
write	يكتب	wrote	written
make	يصنع	made	made
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
keep	يواصل / يستمر في	kept	kept
set	يحدد	set	set

Reading

SB Page (36)

My Learning Plan

To improve my English, I use learning styles when I study at home and at school.

In English class, I try to sit at the front to see the board clearly. To practice writing, I write 3 - 5 sentences each day about what I did. I can record my voice to improve and know the correct pronunciation of words.

Sometimes, I can watch videos to help me as I can learn better when I listen and see at the same time.

Now, I am learning vocabulary anywhere. I always talk to my friends in English. We like to draw diagrams to remind us.

Create a journal to reflect on your learning and plan how to become a better learner.

Instructions:

- Describe how you learn best (for example: by reading, doing, listening, or watching).
- Write about something you are proud of in your learning.
- Set at least one goal to become a better learner.

Unit 2 Learning to learn

- List steps you will take to reach your goal(s).
- Make your journal creative with drawings, colors, or pictures.

Presentation:

- Share your journal with your group first, then share your favorite parts with the class.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your class performance

• اسأل واجب أسئلة عن الاداء الدراسي.

Question	Answer
What did you learn this week?	- I learned that..... تعلمت أن
Did you face any problems?	- One problem I had... but I solved it by.. مشكلة واحدة واجهتها، ولكنني حللتها بأن.....
What do you think is good for studying?	- I think it's good to..... أعتقد من الجيد أن
When do you learn best?	- I learn best when I... so I like to..... - أتعلم بشكل أفضل عندما... لذا أحب أن.....
Do you have any advice for new students?	- My advice for a new learner is to - نصيحتي للمتعلم الجديد هي أن.....

Complete the following dialog:

Lina and Omar are talking about learning

Lena : Hi Omar! How is your learning going?

Omar: Well! I learned that ① every day helps me remember more.

Lena : That's great! Did you have any ② ?

Omar: One problem. I forgot new words, but I ③ it by writing them in a notebook.

Lena : I think it's good to study a little every day.

Omar: Me too. I learn best when I see pictures, so I like to use charts and

④

Lena : My advice for a new learner is to ask questions and keep trying.

Writing Skills

Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

1- The full stop (.) النقطه

- النقطة في نهاية الجملة الخبرية :

- We use a full stop (.) at the end of a statement.
- He plays football. - We are friends.

2- The question mark (?) علامة الاستفهام

- تستخدم علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال:

- We use a question mark (?) at the end of a question.
- Have you ever been to Luxor? - What are you doing?

- Practice

Rewrite the following sentences using correct punctuation marks.

- how are you feeling today
- can you help me with this problem
- my brother adel is 8 years old
- i live in tahrir street
- nadda's father is a doctor

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- I need to _____ my English. What should I do?
a. improve b. forget c. lose d. paint
- We need to share our _____ for the project.
a. shoes b. lunch c. ideas d. toys
- You should _____ English every day.
a. stop b. practice c. listen d. fix
- If you don't win, it's okay to _____ again. Never give up.
a. sit b. eat c. try d. wait
- Don't worry about your _____. Just learn from them.
a. mistakes b. shoes c. games d. books
- A good way to remember your day is to write in a _____.
a. marker b. voice c. performance d. journal
- Please, raise your _____ so everyone can hear you.
a. marker b. paper c. desk d. voice

Unit 2 Learning to learn

8. We can the video to watch later.
a. write b. eat c. record d. carry
9. Scientists something new every day.
a. discover b. forget c. hide d. sell
10. I can study, even on the bus.
a. nowhere b. anywhere c. yesterday d. loudly
11. Tom likes to draw and paint. He is very
a. loud b. creative c. sleepy d. clean
12. This year's exam was much than last year's.
a. cleaner b. higher c. taller d. harder
13. We can videos to show what we learned.
a. take b. close c. make d. buy
14. Study hard if you want to your goal.
a. reach b. play c. sleep d. stop
15. The teacher always us advice to do better.
a. gives b. sings c. waits d. laughs
16. You should read for 15 minutes every day.
a. last b. least c. lost d. list
17. I always talk to my friends English.
a. on b. for c. in d. with

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pronunciation - write - record - practice - journal

You need to learn new words to improve your English. You should ① every day. Say new words out loud to help your ② You can also write in a ③ about your day. You can ④ your voice to listen and check your speaking. These small steps can help you learn better and faster.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is talking to Omar about her art club.

Omar : Hi Mariam! I saw you joined the art club. How is it?

Mariam : It's great! I ① that painting helps me feel calm and happy.

Omar : Was it easy to start?

Mariam : I had one problem, but I ② it by watching a video.

Omar : What helps you most in the club?

Mariam : I learn ③ when I see examples, so I like to watch others first.

Omar : What would you tell someone new?

Mariam : My ④ for a new learner is to be brave and just join.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words to:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Your friend telling him about things that help you learn better at your new school.
Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmed@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Ali and his email address is ali@yahoo.com

New Message
↩ ↪ ✕

To : _____

From : _____

Subject : _____

Cc Bcc

Send

 |
 |
 |
 |
 |

 |

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الإيميل :

- 1- What do you think of your new school?
- 2- What about the teachers and classes?
- 3- What do you do during breaks?
- 4- Does it have a library and a science lab?

- اجابة الاسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

- Moved to a new school.
- The teachers and the classes are really
- My new school has

Review on Unit 2

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

map (n.)	خريطة	experiences (n.)	تجارب حياتية/ خبرات
mind map (n.)	خريطة ذهنية	courage (n.)	الشجاعة
chart (n.)	مخطط / رسم بياني	respect (n. / v. ed)	احترام - يحترم
explanation (n.)	شرح	ambition (n.)	الطموح
experiment (n.)	تجربة	perseverance (n.)	مواظبة / مثابرة
technique (n.)	اسلوب	unity (n.)	الوحدة / الاتحاد
visual (adj. / n.)	بصري - شيء مرئي	own (adj.)	ملك / خاصته
auditory (adj.)	سمعي	hesitated (adj.)	متردد
kinesthetic (adj.)	حركي	confident (adj.)	واثق من نفسه
successful (adj.)	ناجح	creative (adj.)	مبدع
regularly (adv.)	بانتظام	scared (adj.)	خائف / مرعوب
review (v. ed)	يراجع	develop (v. ed)	يطور / ينمي
improve (v. d)	يحسّن / يطور	communicate (v. d)	يتواصل
organize (v. d)	ينظم	beneath (adv.)	أسفل / تحت
benefits (n.)	فوائد	improve (v. d)	يحسّن / يطور
solutions (n.)	حلول	ideas (n.)	أفكار
cooperation (n.)	التعاون	practice (n. / v. d)	ممارسة / يمارس
leadership (n.)	القيادة	try (v. ied)	يحاول / يجرب
apps = applications (n.)	تطبيقات	mistakes (n.)	أخطاء
digital tools (n.)	الأدوات الرقمية	performance (n.)	أداء



Language

قواعد لغوية

A. Using "can" to express ability:

- يستخدم الفعل الناقص (can) متبوعا بفعل في المصدر للتعبير عن القدرة على القيام بشيء - وهو يساوي في المعنى (be able to):

Ex. I can learn best when my study space is tidy.

Ex. We can remember well when we get enough sleep.

B. Using "can't / cannot" to express inability:

- يستخدم الشكل المنفي (can't / cannot) متبوعا بفعل في المصدر للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على القيام بشيء - وهو يساوي في المعنى (be not able to):

Ex. I can't study well when the room is noisy.

Ex. I can't answer this question because it's difficult.

C. The Present Continuous Tense: زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات

فاعل + am / is / are + v -ing

Ex. I'm studying English at the moment.

Ex. He / She is doing the washing up.

Ex. We / They are waiting for the school bus.

Negative النفي

فاعل + am / is / are + not + v -ing

Ex. I'm not going to the club at the moment.

Ex. The baby isn't sleeping.

Ex. The children are not watching TV right now.

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث في نفس توقيت الكلام:

Ex. She is sleeping now

Ex. The children are playing in the garden.

Key words & phrases الكلمات والتعبيرات الدالة على المضارع المستمر

now	right now	at the moment	at the present
-----	-----------	---------------	----------------

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

My favorite learning style is visual learning. I learn best when I see things. I like to use pictures, charts, and colors to help me remember. I enjoy watching videos and reading books with images. When I study, I use colourful notes and draw small pictures. This helps me understand better. I also like to make mind maps to organize ideas. Seeing the information helps me think clearly. If something is hard, I look at a picture to make it easier to learn.

Lessons 5 & 6

From : ahmed@gmail.com

To : ali@yahoo.com

Subject : My New School

Hi Ali,

I hope you are well. I moved to a new school last week. I like it a lot! The teachers and the classes are really nice and helpful. During breaks, I talk to new friends and eat snacks. My new school has a big library and a science lab. I read books and do fun experiments. I think the school is great and helps me learn better.

Write soon!

Yours,

Ahmed

Al-Azhar Test

I always study at the same time every day. I read my notes and write new words in a notebook. I take short breaks so I don't get tired. I like to study in a quiet place with no noise. Studying every day helps me remember things better.

Test on Unit 2

If you are a new learner, don't worry. Learning takes time. My advice is to start with easy things and keep going. Read a little every day and write down new words. Listen carefully and ask questions if you don't understand. Practice speaking, even if you make mistakes. Mistakes help you learn.

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What does healthy food help?

- a. Only your body b. Only your mind
c. Your body and mind d. Nothing

2. What should you drink instead of sugary drinks?

- a. Juice b. Soda c. Water d. Milk

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Yousef and Hani about the weekend activities.

Youssef : Hi Hani! How was your weekend?

Hani : It was fun! ① with my family.

Youssef : ② ?

Hani : We played football and had a picnic.

Youssef : ③ every weekend?

Hani : Not always, but I try to go when the weather is nice.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We did a fun in science class to understand how a volcano explodes.

- a. story b. distraction c. dance d. experiment

2. To get the adjective from the verb "enjoy", we add the suffix at the end.

- a. ion b. ly c. able d. sion

3. activity means moving your body, like running or jumping.

- a. Mental b. Physical c. Sitting d. Resting

4. I can't Spanish.

- a. speak b. speaking c. spoke d. speaks

5. I my homework right now.

- a. did b. do c. does d. am doing

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Reading is a good habit. It helps you learn new words and ideas. When you read books, you can visit new places and meet new people in your mind. Reading also helps you write better and speak better. You can read at school, at home, or even in the park. Many people read before bed to relax. You can read stories, poems, or facts. Reading every day helps you become smarter and more creative.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is reading a good habit?
2. Where can you read?
3. What do people like to read before bed?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What does reading help you do?

a. Sleep more	b. Eat better
c. Learn new words	d. Run faster
5. What can you read?

a. Homework only	b. Stories and poems
c. Only newspapers	d. Nothing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm (do) my homework.
2. My sister can (speak) English.
3. The boys (were) watching a cartoon at the moment.
4. I (can) carry this bag. It's not heavy.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"My studying habits."

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 2

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I wake up every day at
 a. 8:30 a.m. b. 7:00 a.m. c. 6:30 a.m. d. 10:00 a.m.
2. After waking up, I
 a. play games b. brush my teeth
 c. go to the park d. read a book
3. I eat breakfast
 a. with my friends b. at school
 c. alone in my room d. with my family

B- Listen and complete:

4. At school, I study subjects like
5. After school, I
6. I go to bed at

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My is to become a teacher of English.
 a. happiness b. courage c. cooperation d. ambition
2. One of the benefits of is students work together.
 a. firework b. teamwork c. stonework d. homework

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

creative - learn - describe - advice - remember

To improve at school, listen to your teachers' ideas and try your best. Write what you ① in a notebook. This helps you ② better. When you answer questions, ③ things clearly. Don't be afraid to be ④ Try new ways to study, like drawing or making small charts..

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last year, I got a pet chicken. I named her Lucy. She does not act like other chickens. She follows me everywhere-even to the bus stop! One day, Lucy ran into my classroom. Everyone laughed! The teacher said, "We don't teach chickens here!" I

had to carry Lucy home. She sat next to me while I did my homework. She even tried to take the pencil. My friends now call her "Lucy the smart chicken." I think she wants to go to school!.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lucy is a

a. cat

b. dog

c. chicken

d. duck

2. Lucy followed the writer to

a. the park

b. the bus stop

c. the kitchen

d. the zoo

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the name of the chicken?

.....

4. What funny thing did Lucy do at school?

.....

5. What did the teacher say when Lucy came in?

.....

6. Why do the writer's friends call Lucy "the smart chicken"?

.....

C. Writing**5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. They are our classroom at the moment.

a. paint

b. painting

c. painted

d. paints

2. This quiz is very easy, so I answer it on my own.

a. can't

b. don't

c. have

d. can

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm (help) my brother with his homework at the moment.

2. I can't (doing) my homework.

3. The girl is (listens) to music.

4. My brother can (speaks) two languages.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Omar about his English class.

Ali : Hi, Omar! Do you like your English class?

Omar : Yes, I do! It's fun and 1 _____

Ali : 2 do you do in the class?

Omar : We read stories, learn new words, and ③ _____ in English.

Ali : Who is your teacher?

Omar : Her name is Miss Sara. She is very kind and 4 _____

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

“Some advice for new learners”

[illegible]



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify specific details about a role models actions and qualities
- Use context clues to understand vocabulary related to leadership and personal qualities

Listening:

- Identify the main idea in interviews about role models and inspiring figures
- Identify specific details such as what a role model did, their impact, and their personal qualities

Speaking:

- Talk about a personal role model using past simple and key vocabulary

- Discuss leadership qualities in pairs or groups

Language:

- Identify and use regular and irregular past simple verbs to talk about past actions and events
- Use past simple to ask and answer questions in conversations / interviews

Writing:

- Write a paragraph about someone students admire using past simple tense
- Express personal feelings and reflections about the qualities and actions of a role model



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

role model (n)	قدوة / نموذج يحتذى به	kind (adj)	لطيف / عطوف
achievement (n)	إنجاز	passionate (adj)	مفعم بالمشاعر / متحمس / شغوف
community (n)	مجتمع / جماعة	determined (adj.)	مصمم / عاقد العزم
courageous (adj.)	شجاع	inspire (v.)(d.)	يلهم
hero (n)	بطل	respect (v.)(ed)	يحترمه

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

science (n)	العلم	sadly (adv)	للأسف / بكل أسف
physics (n)	الفيزياء	knowledge (n)	معرفة
atomic radiation (n)	الاشعاع الذري	scientist (n)	عالم
peace (n)	سلام / سَلَم	spirit (n)	روح
people's lives (n)	حيوات الناس	symbol (n)	رمز
wish (n)	أمنية / رغبة	hope (n)	أمل
cancer (n)	سرطان (مرض)	accident (n)	حادثة / حادث
treatment (n)	علاج	strength (n)	قوة
aspirin (n)	أسبرين (دواء)	soldier (n)	جندي
Cairo University (n)	جامعة القاهرة	attack (n)	هجوم
the United States (n)	الولايات المتحدة	quality (n)	صفة / سمة
invention (n)	اختراع	kindness (n)	الطيبة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	determination (n)	العزيمة
teamwork (n)	التعاون الجماعي	courage (n)	الشجاعة
inspiring (adj)	ملهـم / مبدع	continue (d)(v)	يستمر
army (n)	جيش	believe (d)(v)	يعتقد
terrorist (n)	ارهابي	improve (d)(v)	يُحسِّن
camp (n)	معسكر	die (d)(v)	يموت
cheap (adj)	رخيص	admire (d)(v)	يُعجِب بـ
still (adv)	لا يزال	defend (ed)	يدافع

Definitions

hero	بطل	a person who does great things for others.
courageous	شجاع	very brave.
kind	طيب	friendly and caring ⁽¹⁾ .
achievement	إنجاز	success in reaching a goal.
community	مجتمع	people living in one place.
passionate	متحمس/شغوف	strong feeling about something.
determined	مصمم	not giving up ⁽²⁾ easily.
inspire	يلهم	to give someone motivation ⁽³⁾ or encouraging.
respect	يحترم	to feel admiration ⁽⁴⁾ for someone.
role model	قدوة	someone you admire and try to be like.

Arabic Meaning

١. مهتم بالآخرين
٢. يستسلم
٣. التحفيز
٤. الإعجاب

Expressions & Prepositions

make a person a hero	يجعل شخصاً بطلاً	share ideas/knowledge	يشترك آراء / معرفة
a symbol of hope	رمز الأمل	around the world	حول العالم
(Be) born	وُلد	determined in / to	عاقد العزم في / لـ
one of the first	واحدة من أول	from a young age	منذ الطفولة
get a Ph. D.	يحصل على الدكتوراه	died in an accident	توفي في حادثة
(Be) used for	يستخدم من أجل	during the attack	أثناء الهجوم
work hard	يعمل جيد		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
inspiring	ملهـم	encouraging		uninspiring	مثبط للعزيمة
true	حقيقي	real		false	مزيف
courageous	شجاع	brave		cowardly	جبان
kind	طيب	good/friendly		cruel	قاسي
cheap	رخيص	inexpensive		expensive	غالي
admire	يعجب	love very much		despise	يحتقر

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ed / -ing	تحول الأفعال إلى صفات	inspiring / determined
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	achievement
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	courageous
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	sadly

- **Ph.D.** = Doctor of Philosophy درجة الدكتوراه = أعلى درجة أكاديمية.
- **determine** كلمة **min** مثل الحروف **minute** في كلمة **minute** يُنطق المقطع الأخير من كلمة **determine** مثل الحروف **min** في كلمة **minute**.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يُدرّس	taught	taught
make	يصنع	made	made
say	يقول	said	said
fight	يحارب/يقاتل	fought	fought
become	يصبح	became	become



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

- بعض الكلمات تعتبر أفعال واسماء في نفس الوقت علي حسب السياق.

1) love / attack / hope / wish / work

- **work** (عمل/يعمل)

Ex. She **worked** hard. (V)

Ex. Her **work** still inspires people. (N)

- **attack** (هجوم/يهاجم)

Ex. My dog **attacked** my friend. (V)

Ex. Where did the **attack** happen? (N)

2) hero / Champion

- **hero** بطل (قومي/تاريخي/أسطوري/في رواية) أي شخص قام بعمل استثنائي

Ex. His charity work made him a local **hero**.

- **champion**: بطل (رياضة)

Ex. She is an Olympic skating **champion**.

3) event / accident

- **event** (حدث هام ومخطط ويحتاج إلى ترتيب كجتماع الناس)

Ex. The World Cup will be the main **event** next year.

- **accident** (حادث غير متعمد ويحدث غالباً فجأة وينتج عنه ضرر)

Ex. She died in a car **accident**.

4 physics / mathematics

{Physics-mathematics} تعامل هذه الكلمات دائماً معاملة المفرد

Ex. Physics **is** my favourite subject.

5 another / other / others

• **another** + اسم مفرد (شيء إضافي) آخر

Ex. Would you like to move to **another** country?

• **other** + اسم جمع أخرى

Ex. Wael has always loved fish and **other** sea animals.

• **others** (بدون شيء بعدها) = **other** + اسم جمع آخرون

Ex. Some people like playing chess. **Others** (**other people**) don't.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My wish is to be famous. The word "**wish**" here is a/an
a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. noun
2. Ahmed El-Mansy was a war
a. Champion b. hero
c. Championship d. prize
3. I wasn't able to move my arm after the
a. event b. incident c. accident d. book
4. Mathematics difficult for me.
a. are b. were c. is d. have
5. This shirt is dirty. I want one.
a. others b. another c. other d. an other



Reading



SB Page (44)

Dr. Samira Moussa

استمع إلى النص



Dr. Samira Moussa was a true hero who continues to **inspire**⁽¹⁾ people today. She was born in Egypt in 1917 and showed a great love for science from a young age. She was **determined**⁽²⁾ to study **physics**⁽³⁾ and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a **PhD**⁽⁴⁾ in **Atomic Radiation**⁽⁵⁾.

Samira was kind and always wanted to help her community. She believed that science should be used for **peace**⁽⁶⁾ and to improve

١. يلهم
٢. مصممة
٣. الفيزياء
٤. دكتوراة
٥. الاشعاع الذري
٦. السلام

people's lives. She often said, "My wish for **cancer treatment**⁽⁷⁾ is to be as cheap as **aspirin**⁽⁸⁾." She worked hard in research and taught students at Cairo University. She traveled to the United States to continue her research and to share **knowledge**⁽⁹⁾ with other scientists. Her **achievement**⁽¹⁰⁾ in science and her moving spirit made her a **symbol**⁽¹¹⁾ of hope for many Egyptian girls. Sadly, she died in a car accident in 1952, but her work still inspires scientists around the world. Dr. Samira Moussa's story teaches us to be brave, caring, and determined in helping our community.

٧. علاج للسرطان
٨. اسبرين
٩. معرفة
١٠. انجاز
١١. رمز



Listen to Noha's blog post

My role model is my mother.

She works very hard every day and always helps others. Even when she's tired, she smiles and takes care of our family. She inspires me to work hard at school and to be kind to everyone.

I respect her because she never gives up, even when things are difficult. She teaches me that being strong doesn't mean never feeling sad - it means keeping going. When I grow up, I want to be just like her. That's why my mother is my favorite role model.



Listen to the dialog about Ahmed El-Mansy:

Listen to Noha's blog post

Omar: Hi, Nada. Do you know Ahmed El-Mansy?

Nada: Yes, of course. He's a brave Egyptian hero.

Omar: What was his job?

Nada: He was an officer in the Egyptian army.

Omar: What did he do for Egypt?

Nada: He fought the terrorists and protected our country.

Omar: How did he and his soldiers fight?

Nada: They defended their camp bravely and did not give up during the attack.

Omar: That's very brave! Did he save any soldiers?

Nada: Yes, he helped and saved many soldiers before he died.

Omar: Why do people love him so much?

Nada: Because he loved Egypt and gave his life to keep it safe.

Omar: What lesson do we learn from him?

Nada: We learn to love our country, be brave, and help others.

Omar: Yes, we should always remember him as a true hero.

Nada: Of course, Omar. He will always live in our hearts.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about a school task.

Aya : Hello, Ola! What are you doing?

Ola : Hello, Aya! I'm doing my school task.

Aya : ① is it about?

Ola : It is about ② and role models in our community.

Aya : That's great. ③ is your hero?

Ola : My father!

Aya : What does he do for our community?

Ola : He works for a ④ to help the poor.

Aya : You should be proud of him!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Dr. Samira Moussa was a true who still inspires people today. SB
a. zero b. hero c. peace d. champion
- Dr. Samira was and wanted to help our community. SB
a. cruel b. unkind c. greedy d. kind
- Her in science made her a symbol of hope for many Egyptian girls. SB
a. achievement b. agreement c. statement d. equipment
- I'm a sports man. I have been about football.
a. state b. hateful c. passionate d. speed
- Mr. Ahmed is my because I want to be like him in the future.
a. remote control b. round table c. role model d. rock music
- The library is open to all members of the
a. desert b. community c. park d. school
- The firefighter was very when he saved the child from the burning house.
a. careless b. lazy c. noisy d. courageous
- Mayar was very to finish the race, even though she was tired.
a. confused b. determined c. bored d. lazy

9. Good teachers their students to work hard.
 a. ignore b. should c. laugh at d. inspire
10. We should always our parents and our heroes.
 a. copy b. interrupt c. respect d. forget

Vocabulary

11. Do you have an person in your life?
 a. noisy b. boring c. selfish d. inspiring
12. Dr. Samira Moussa got a Ph.D. in atomic
 a. radiation b. pollution c. information d. transportation
13. What did the soldiers do during the ?
 a. concert b. party c. match d. attack
14. Scientists are working hard to find treatment for
 a. dancer b. cancer c. camera d. cancel
15. Books are a great source of
 a. travel b. noise c. knowledge d. paper
16. He was a very brave and protected his country during the attack.
 a. soldier b. singer c. teacher d. painter
17. After the war ended, the people lived in again.
 a. noise b. danger c. peace d. fire
18. During the match, players show good sports
 a. fashion b. food c. style d. spirit
19. The opposite of the word "true" is
 a. real b. correct c. fire d. false
20. We can change the word "kind" into a noun by adding
 a. -ly b. -ness c. -ment d. -ing

Definitions

21. A is a person who does great things for others.
 a. pest b. hero c. beggar d. poster
22. To is to give someone motivation.
 a. inspire b. expire c. stir d. fire

Expressions & prepositions

23. Her achievement made her a of hope for many girls.
 a. can b. bottle c. cup d. symbol
24. Dr. Samira's story teaches us to be determined helping our community.
 a. to b. in c. at d. for



Language

قواعد لغوية

The past simple

1- The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفاعل (كل الضمائر)

الأفعال المنتظمة

هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

work → worked walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن ثم حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied carry → carried

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف متحرك ثم حرف y نضيف (ed) بدون أي تغيير

enjoy → enjoyed play → played

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed)

stop → stopped control → controlled

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هي الأفعال التي لا يضاف لها ed في الماضي وتحفظ كما هي

go → went eat → ate do → did

am / is → was are → were have / has → had

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى في الماضي:

Ex. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city.

• يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لسرد أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي:

Ex. One day I saw a bird on a tree. It had many colors.

Affirmative الإثبات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday.

Ex. I played games last week.

Negative النفي

• بشكل عام يحول الماضي البسيط للنفي باستخدام (didn't) مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

→ Subject + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't visit my family.

Ex. He didn't eat fish.

• يمكن استخدام (never) بدلاً من (didn't) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

→ Subject + never + inf. الفعل في الماضي البسيط

Ex. Khalid never went to Aswan.

Question السؤال

السؤال بـ "هل...؟"

→ Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...؟

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did.

- No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام (Wh-)

→ did + فاعل + inf....? + كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What did you do yesterday?

B: We went to the park.

لاحظ في السؤال بمعنى لما لم تفعل...؟ نستخدم didn't في السؤال

Ex. Why didn't you come yesterday?

Notes

١. يمكن استخدام فعل (be) في السؤال كفعل أساسي باستخدام (was / were) كالتالي:

يستخدم فعل (be) للسؤال عن اسم أو صفة، ونستخدم (Did) للسؤال عن فعل

Ex. Was Hany a doctor?

- No, they weren't.

Ex. Were they late?

- Yes, they were.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

be	present	simple past
I	am	was
he - she - it	is	was
you - we - they	are	were

٢- لاحظ هناك أسماء تبدو في معناها جمع لكنها تأخذ فعل مفرد:

The news / information / advice → was

٣. نستخدم فعل (have) في السؤال كفعل أساسي ونسأل عنه بـ (did):

Ex. Did you have a bike in the past? - Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

٤. كلمة (and) تربط جملتين في نفس الزمن (ماضي بسيط).

Ex. I went to the market and bought many things.

٥. ماضي can ← could

Ex. I could swim when I was young.

2- Past time expressions

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	في الماضي	...ago	منذ (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	في عام (٢٠١٠)	this morning	هذا الصباح
last...	... السابق		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

- Where did you go summer?
a. next b. last c. past d. at
- We to Luxor three years ago.
a. move b. moving c. moved d. moves
- Nada go to school yesterday.
a. doesn't b. won't c. don't d. didn't
- My friend was happy because his brother a new car.
a. buying b. buys c. bought d. will buy
- Dr. Samira Moussa a hero.
a. did b. has been c. were d. was
- Adel late for school yesterday?
a. Did b. Was c. Were d. Is
- I two hours studying English yesterday.
a. spends b. spent c. spend d. spending
- My friend absent yesterday.
a. was b. is c. were d. be

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Sama nothing to help her friends, so they were angry with her.
a. doesn't do b. does c. did d. didn't do
- The news I received untrue, I couldn't believe it.
a. are b. were c. was d. has

11. I didn't answer the question, but my sister
 a. done b. did c. do d. does
12. Why to the park? Because I was too busy.
 a. won't you go b. you went c. did you go d. didn't you go
13. **A:** Did you have a pen? **B:** Yes, I one.
 a. has b. did c. was d. had
14. Mr. Ahmed us a new lesson yesterday.
 a. teaches b. teach c. taught d. teaching
15. I buy anything from this shop last night.
 a. don't b. didn't c. won't d. wasn't
16. you ready for yesterday's concert?
 a. Was b. Did c. Are d. Were
17. you answer the exam yesterday?
 a. Can b. Could c. Will d. Do
18. How your last weekend?
 a. did b. are c. is d. was
19. I never sushi but my brother ate it many times.
 a. try b. tried c. tries d. trying
20. I to my friends birthday party because I was ill.
 a. went b. go c. don't go d. didn't go
21. **A:** What Eman do? **B:** She read a book.
 a. will b. do c. did d. does

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. I (help) my mom in the kitchen yesterday.
2. They (don't) go on a trip last week.
3. My dad got a new job and (move) to Dubai.
4. They (are) at the park last week.
5. She visited her grandma two days (yesterday) .
6. He (not be) late for school yesterday.

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. I (can) ride a bike when I was five.
8. Did you have a bike? Yes I (have).
9. I last (go) to the zoo in 2010.
10. Hala (follows) the coach's instruction, so she didn't win the game.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about role model.

• أسأل وأجب عن القدوة والنموذج.

Question

- Who is your role model?
- من هو قدوتك؟
- When was he born?
- متى وُلد؟
- What did he study?
- ما هي دارسته؟
- What were his inventions or achievements?
- ما هي أهم اختراعاته أو إنجازاته؟

Answer

- My role model is
- قدوتي هو
- He was born in
- ولد في
- He studied
- درس
- He invented many things.
- اخترع أشياء كثيرة

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Two friends are talking about role models.

Ali : Who is your role Model, Omar?

Omar : Dr. Samira Moussa is my role model.

Ali : Who is she?

Omar : She is a scientist in ① radiation.

Ali : ② was she born?

Omar : She was born in 1917.

Ali : Why is she your role model?

Omar : Because she teaches me to be ③ and passionate.

Ali : When I return home, I will read an ④ about her.

Omar : She is a great Egyptian hero.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

died - qualities - false - true - soldier

Egypt has many heroes and role models throughout history. I'm proud to say that my role model is Ahmed El-Mansy, a ① hero and a great ② in our army. He had all the ③ of leadership. He ④ in Sinai during a mission to protect the country.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many people remember Ahmed El-Mansy as a national who gave his life for Egypt.
a. chef b. tourist c. hero d. player
- Mr. Ahmed treats his students as his children. He is very
a. sort b. cruel c. fast d. kind
- Winning the national competition was a great for our school.
a. achievement b. problem c. holiday d. mistake
- The doctor gave the patient the right to help him recover.
a. punishment b. treatment c. movement d. equipment
- Honestly and kindness are good in a teacher.
a. holidays b. building c. questions d. qualities
- We must nature and keep the environment clean.
a. break b. cut c. respect d. waste
- The synonym of the word "cheap" is
a. inexpensive b. costly c. pricey d. expensive
- you happy when you got the prize?
a. Did b. Do c. Does d. Were
- A:** What did you have for lunch? **B:** I rice and fish.
a. have b. has c. had d. eat
- I play football this morning.
a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. wasn't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our English teacher last year (did) Mr. Ahmed.
2. I (not do) my homework yesterday.
3. I visited Aswan (next) year.
4. The game (be) great and I scored two goals.
5. Where (do) Aziz go last vacation?

SB

5 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your role model"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1- Who is your role model?

2- When was he born?

3- Where was he born?

4- What did he study?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- He helped his community
- A symbol of hope and success
- He invented many



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	respect (n)	الاحترام
curiosity (n)	فضول / حب المعرفة	courage (n)	شجاعة
teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي	honesty (n)	امانة
perseverance (n)	الاصرار / المثابرة	thinker (n)	مفكر
kindness (n)	الطيبة / اللطف	glowing (adj)	مضئ / متوهج
curious (adj)	فضول	nod (ded) (v)	يوميء رأسه (للموافقة)
determination (n)	عزم / اصرار	grin (ned) (v)	يبتسم / ابتسامة عريضة

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

athlete (n)	شخص رياضي	arts (n)	الفنون
geographer (n)	جغرافي متخصص بدراسة الجغرافيا	location (n)	موقع جغرافي
writer (n)	كاتب	leader (n)	قائد
geography (n)	جغرافيا	top medal (n)	ميدالية عليا
history (n)	تاريخ	the final room	الغرفة الاخيرة
politics (n)	السياسة	glowing book	كتاب متوهج
role (n)	دور	crystal stand	حامل من الكريستال
award (n)	جائزة رسمية	warm smile	ابتسامة ودودة
locked door	باب مقفل	magic wand	عصا سحرية
treasure chest	صندوق كنز	full of pride	ملئ بالفخر
works (n)	أعمال أدبية	memories (n)	الذكريات
real magic (n)	السحر الحقيقي	including (prep)	مشمئلاً على
puzzle (n)	لغز	appear (ed) (v)	يظهر
value (n)	قيمة	powerful (adj)	قوى
strong ideas	أفكار قوية	magical (adj)	سحري
famous (adj)	مشهور	greatest (adj)	الأعظم
deep (adj)	عميق	explain (ed) (n)	يشرح
special (adj)	خاص غير عادي	combine (d) (v)	يضم / يتحد
Egypt's land	أرض مصر	complete (d) (v)	يكمل ، ينهي

Unit 3 Role Models

the Personality of Egypt شخصية مصر (اسم كتاب)	return (ed) (v)	يعود
the State Appreciation Award جائزة الدولة التقديرية	promise (d) (v)	يوعد

Definitions

perseverance	الإصرار	no giving up when things are bad.
curious	فضولي	to be keen to learn or know more about something.
grin	يبتسم	to smile.
nod	يوميء (بالموافقة)	to move the head up and down to show agreement.

Expressions & Prepositions

win awards	يفوز بالجوائز	give up	يستسلم
get Ph. D.	يحصل على درجة الدكتوراه	on a stand	على حامل
(Be) known for	يُعرف بـ	from that day on	منذ ذلك اليوم فصاعداً
believe in	يؤمن بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
famous	مشهور	well-known		unknown	غير مشهور
special	مميز	important		normal	عادي
powerful	قوي	strong		weak	ضعيف
curious	فضولي	questioning		uninterested	غير مهتم

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
geo-	مختص بالأرض	geography
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	thinker - writer
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	powerful
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	glowing
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	famous
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	magical

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
know	يعرف	knew	known
write	يكتب	wrote	written
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
find	يجد	found	found



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 award and reward

- **award** جائزة رسمية من مكان رسمي (يفضل ذكر اسمها)

Ex. She won an **award** for winning the competition.

- **reward**

مكافأة تشجيعية

Ex. My parents gave me a **reward** for passing the exams.

2 Not only ... but also: ليس فقط ... بل أيضا

تستخدم لربط فكرتين متساويتين في الأهمية.

Ex. He is **not only** a teacher **but also** an author.

3 work - works - job

- **work** اسم لا يعد

• "عمل" بشكل عام - أي جهد تبذله في المدرسة أو المكتب أو البيت.

Ex. I have a lot of **work** to do today.

- **works** اسم جمع

• "أعمال" فنية أو أدبية أو علمية (كتب - لوحات).

Ex. We studied the **works** of Taha Hussein.

- **job** اسم يعد

• وظيفة أو مهنة محددة.

Ex. My father has a good **job** in a bank.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Dr. Hemdan won the State Appreciation in 1986.
a. Gift b. Prize c. Reward d. Award
- Moamen not only speaks English speaks French.
a. too b. even c. and too d. but also
- Dr. Hemdan's still help readers understand Egypt better.
a. career b. jobs c. works d. car

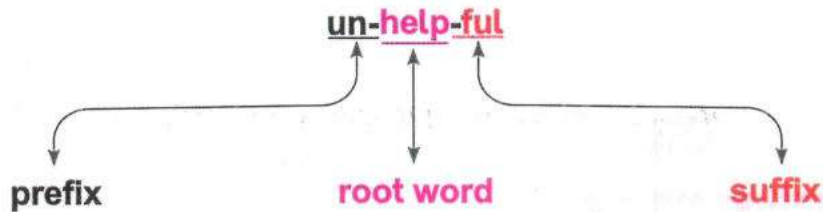


Language

قواعد لغوية

Word-building skills

مهارات تكوين الكلمات



The root

- the **root of the word**: is the base word before adding a prefix or suffix.
- جذر الكلمة: هو الكلمة الأساسية قبل إضافة البادئة أو اللاحقة.

The prefix

- A **prefix** is a group of letters we add to the beginning of word to change its meaning.
- البادئة: هي مجموعة من الحروف نضيفها الى بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

(un) + happy → unhappy

The suffix

- A **suffix** is a group of letters we add to the end of a word to change its meaning or part of speech.

think (verb) + er → thinker (noun)

- اللاحقة: هي مجموعة من الحروف نضيفها إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو نوعها في الكلام.

1 Read the tips then fill in the missing space

Suffix	Example	Part of speech
-ful	power → powerful	Adjective
-ist	science → scient ist	...
-ment	agree → agree ment	...
-er	think → think er	...

Prefix	Example
in-	correct → in correct
un-	afraid → un afraid
ir-	regular → ir regular
dis-	like → dis like

Notes

بادئات تعطي العكس من الكلمة [il- / im- / ir- / un-] •

il- (before l) → illegal

im- (before m or p) → impossible / immoral

ir- (before r) → irregular

Add a suffix or prefix of the following to each root word to create a new word.

un- dis- in - ful - ment - er - un - ir

1. help _____

2. pay _____

3. _____ happy

4. correct _____

5. sing _____

6. _____ responsible

7. like _____

8. _____ usual

Reading

SB Page (46)

استمع إلى النصوص



Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian **geographer**⁽¹⁾ and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt. He studied **geography**⁽²⁾ at Cairo University and later got his **PhD**⁽³⁾ from a university in England. Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep thinker. He combined geography, history, and **politics**⁽⁴⁾ to explain why Egypt is a very special country.

His most famous book is "**The Personality of Egypt**⁽⁵⁾", where he wrote about Egypt's land, its people, and its important **role**⁽⁶⁾ in history. He also wrote books about the Suez Canal.

Dr. Hemdan won many awards, including the **State Appreciation Award**⁽⁷⁾ in 1986 and a top medal in science and arts. He was known for his strong ideas. He believed Egypt's **location**⁽⁸⁾ makes it powerful.

His works still help students and scientists understand Egypt better. He died in 1993, but his books are still important today.

١. جغرافى (متخصص بدراسة الجغرافيا)
٢. جغرافيا
٣. دكتوراة
٤. سياسة
٥. شخصية مصر
٦. دور
٧. جائزة الدولة التقديرية
٨. موقع

Story Time

The Magic Classroom

Chapter Three

The Greatest Lessons



Before you read, discuss in pairs

Inside the final room, the children found a glowing book on a **crystal stand**⁽¹⁾. Mr. Adam appeared with a **warm smile**⁽²⁾. "You have completed the Magic Classroom," he said. "But remember, the real magic is not in the puzzles, it is in the **values**⁽³⁾ you showed."

He opened the magical book, and **glowing**⁽⁴⁾ words appeared:

"**Responsibility**⁽⁵⁾. **Curiosity**⁽⁶⁾. **Teamwork**⁽⁷⁾. Respect. **Determination**⁽⁸⁾. Courage."

Sara smiled, "We solved every problem by working together."

Zain added, "We respected each other and stayed curious."

Omar **grinned**⁽⁹⁾, "I had courage because my friends believed in me."

Mr. Adam **nodded**⁽¹⁰⁾, "You also showed **honesty**⁽¹¹⁾-doing the right thing even when no one was watching."

The children returned to their classroom, their hearts full of pride and happiness. From that day on, they promised to use these values in everything they did-at school, at home, and online.

They knew that the greatest lessons they had learned were not about magic, but about kindness, respect, and **never giving**⁽¹²⁾ up on themselves or each other.



١. حامل من الكريستال
٢. ابتسامه ودودة
٣. قيم
٤. متوهج
٥. مسؤولية
٦. حب المعرفة
٧. العمل الجماعي
٨. تصميم
٩. ابتسم
١٠. يومئ بالموافقة
١١. امانة
١٢. لا تستسلم ابدا

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher and his students are talking about a story.

Mr. Ahmed : Did you enjoy reading the story, Ali?

Ali : Yes, sir. I knew some new 1

Mr. Ahmed : What values 2 you learn in the story?

Ali : I learned teamwork, sir.

Mr. Ahmed : 3 are values important in our lives, Omar?

Omar : Because they help us do the right things.

Mr. Ahmed : Eman, tell me what value you like most and why?

Eman : I like 4 because we must respect each other.

Mr. Ahmed : I am proud of you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep **SB**
a. player b. trader c. thinker d. sinker
- The children found a book on a crystal stand. **SB**
a. glowing b. growing c. dusty d. stupid
- Muhammed takes care of his little sister. He has a strong sense of
a. hobby b. responsibility c. holiday d. information
- Abdalla always asks questions about how things work. He has a lot of
a. strength b. curiosity c. danger d. kindness
- Ola is always polite and does the right thing, even when no one is watching. She shows great
a. talent b. energy c. beauty d. honesty
- Even after falling twice, Salma kept trying until she succeed. She showed great
a. laziness b. fear c. perseverance d. sadness
- The students worked together to clean the classroom. They showed good
a. noise b. anger c. teamwork d. homework
- Mona helped the old lady carry her bags. It was an act of
a. kindness b. sadness c. speed d. strength

9. When I gave him the gift, he began to _____ with happiness.

- a. cry b. grin c. shout d. sleep

10. The teacher asked Ali if he understood, and he just _____ his head.

- a. killed b. painted c. kicked d. nodded

Vocabulary

11. As he was a geographer Dr. Hemdan believed Egypt's _____ made it strong and powerful. **SB**

- a. climate b. location c. words d. weather

12. The children promised to use the _____ they learned in their life. **SB**

- a. money b. pounds c. values d. cats

13. In the school play, Ali had the main _____ of the hero.

- a. rule b. road c. rope d. role

14. Hana Goda is a great Egyptian _____ who plays tennis well.

- a. teacher b. athlete c. writer d. singer

15. Wael won the _____ in the school swimming competitions. He came first.

- a. paper medal b. top medal c. bronze medal d. old medal

16. We learned about ancient Egypt in our _____ class.

- a. history b. maths c. music d. science

17. Students need to _____ hard work and smart ideas to succeed.

- a. break b. paint c. combine d. cry

18. We can get the opposite of the word "regular" by adding the prefix _____.

- a. dis- b. il- c. im- d. ir-

19. The synonym of the word "famous" is _____.

- a. infamous b. unfamous c. unknown d. well-known

Definitions

20. To _____ means to smile widely.

- a. cry b. grin c. shout d. sleep

21. To _____ means to move the head up and down to show agreement.

- a. kill b. hit c. shake d. nod

22. To be keen to learn or know about something means _____.

- a. curious b. famous c. lazy d. kind

Expressions and prepositions

23. The questions is hard. I - tell me the answer.
a. give away b. give in c. give out d. give up
24. Dr. Hemdan was interested geography.
a. at b. in c. to d. on
25. Mr. Ahmed is known his difficult questions.
a. to b. about c. off d. for

General Exercises

on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about a great Egyptian thinker.

Omar : Did you read about Dr. Gamal Hemdan?

Sara : ① ! He is a role model for me.

Omar : His books helped people ② how important Egypt is.

Sara : I admire how he ③ science and history together.

Omar : I hope I can do something good for Egypt like he did.

Sara : He was ④ a scientist but also a thinker.

Omar : He was a great man.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

values - special - geographer - pest - choose

A role model can be a family member, athlete, teacher, or someone else! You should ① your role model carefully. In the scientific field, you can find Dr. Gamal Hemdan, who was famous ② and writer. Your teachers are the best choice as they help you learn important ③ in your life. They gave you ④ qualities that form your personality.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is a good because he always finds smart solutions.
a. sinker b. thinker c. eater d. sleeper
2. Dr. Hemdan won many in science and arts.
a. rewards b. gifts c. price d. awards

SB

Unit 3 Role Models

3. At night, we can see the stars in the sky.
a. smiling b. eating c. glowing d. running
4. A studies the Earth, maps, and places around the world.
a. musician b. farmer c. geographer d. chef
5. Hana returned the wallet she found on the street without taking anything. This shows her great
a. honesty b. laziness c. anger d. talent
6. When I told him the funny joke, he started to
a. bake b. grill c. boil d. grin
7. My grandfather told us many interesting from his childhood.
a. pillows b. memories c. bottles d. papers
8. After winning the race, Omar stood full of in front of his friends.
a. noise b. bride c. pride d. sugar
9. The player gained the of everyone because he played fairly.
a. noise b. respect c. chance d. game
10. We read some of the famous of Dr. Gamal Hemdan.
a. clothes b. games c. works d. photos

4 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Values in life"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What does this word "value" mean?
- 2- Why are values important?
- 3- From whom can we learn values?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Show your kindness
- Show great perseverance us teamwork



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

challenges (n)	تحديات	make a difference	يصنع فرق
dedication (n)	تكريس الوقت (اخلاص العمل)	healthier (adj)	أكثر صحة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	determined (adj)	مصمم (عاقد العزم)
leader (n)	قائد	passionate (adj)	متحمس/شغوف
community (n)	جماعة أو مجتمع	admire (d) (v)	يعجب بـ
hero (n)	بطل	inspire (d) (v)	يلهم
brave (adj)	شجاع	overcome (v)	يتغلب على / يقهر

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

kidney (n)	الكلية	true (adj)	صحيح
diseases (n)	أمراض	famous (adj)	مشهور
method (n)	طريقة/أسلوب	difficult (adj)	صعب
patient (n)	مريض	develop (v)(ed)	يطور
situation (n)	وضع أو موقف	care about (v)(ed)	يهتم بـ/يحرص على
doctor (n)	طبيب	face (v)(d)	يواجه
the Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأولمبية	stop (ped)	يتوقف
transplant (n)	زراعة عضو في الجسد		



Definitions

inspire	يلهم	help someone feel strong or hopeful ⁽¹⁾ .
brave	شجاع	courageous and not afraid ⁽²⁾ .
achievement	إنجاز	something important you did after hard work.
admire	يعجب	think someone is great or special.

Arabic Meaning

١. متفائل
٢. خائف

Expressions & Prepositions

face problems	يواجه مشاكل	work hard	يعمل بجد
follow dreams	يتبع الأحلام	kind to = good to	طيب تجاه (أشخاص)
take time to + inf.	يستغرق وقتا لكي	care about	يهتم بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
hard	صعب	difficult		easy	سهل
kind	طيب	friendly		cruel	قاس
young	صغير	little / youthful		old	كبير

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
trans-	نقل إلى مكان آخر	transplant
dis-	تعطي العكس	disease
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	dedication
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	leader

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
overcome	يقهر	overcame	overcome
show	يظهر	showed	shown



Writing Skills

Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم

• The Comma (,) الفاصلة السفلية

• ملحوظة: في الكتابة يتم ترك مسافة (space) بعد (,) وليس قبلها.

١- الفصل بين القوائم، على أن توضع (and) قبل العنصر الأخير في القائمة.

- I bought apples, oranges, bananas, and grapes.

- يمكن استخدام (,) قبل (and) أو يمكن حذفها وتعتبر صحيحة أيضاً.

٢- تستخدم (,) للفصل بين الأجزاء المستقلة مع هذه الروابط:

[and / but / for / or / nor / so / yet]

- I wanted to help, but I didn't know how.

٣- تستخدم (,) بعد المخاطب إذا جاء في أول الجملة:

- Soha, could you help me?

٤- تستخدم (,) للعناصر التمهيدية في بداية الجملة:

- After lunch, we went back to work.

• Practice

Punctuate the following sentences.

1. i went to the shops and bought apples fish and some bread
2. nada would you help me with my project



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

take

take + وقت + to + infinitive يستغرق

Ex. It **takes** three hours to get to the airport.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It took much time ----- the bike.

a. to repaire

b. repaire

c. a&b

d. repairing



Reading



SB Page (50)



استمع إلى النص

Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem is a famous Egyptian doctor and a **hero**⁽¹⁾ to many people. He is a **determined**⁽²⁾ doctor who worked hard to help people with **kidney diseases**⁽³⁾. Dr. Ghoniem's **achievements**⁽⁴⁾ are many, as he **developed**⁽⁵⁾ new methods for **kidney transplants**⁽⁶⁾ and helped many patients in his community.

He is brave because he worked in difficult situations and did not stop when he faced problems. Dr. Ghoniem is also very kind to his patients, always taking time to listen to them. Many young doctors say that Dr. Ghoniem **inspires**⁽⁷⁾ them to become better doctors and to help others.

His work is important not only in Egypt, but also around the world. Dr. Ghoniem shows us that one person can **make a big difference**⁽⁸⁾ when they care about and love their work. He teaches us that true heroes are those who help people and make their communities stronger and healthier.

١. بطل
٢. مصمم
٣. امراض الكلى
٤. انجازات
٥. يطور
٦. زراعة الكلى
٧. يلهم
٨. يحدث الفارق

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Success needs hard work and
a. celebration b. invitation c. dedication d. vacation
2. Life is full of, but we must keep trying and never give up.
a. challenges b. choices c. changes d. chances
3. We must be strong to our problems.
a. create b. forget c. remember d. overcome
4. Dr. Ghoniem young doctors to become better. SB
a. inspires b. kills c. discourages d. stops
5. Dr. Ghoniem is a to many people. SB
a. killer b. hero c. tree d. liar
6. I really my father because he works hard for our family.
a. annoy b. avoid c. argue d. admire
7. Helping poor people really in their lives.
a. gives a reason b. dislikes the difference
c. makes a difference c. takes a break
8. We felt proud of our in the school project.
a. appointments b. agreements c. movements d. achievements SB
9. True heroes can make their community stronger and SB
a. weaker b. healthier c. worse d. fatter
10. Mona is very about drawing. She spends hours every day working on her art.
a. noisy b. lazy c. passionate d. worried

Vocabulary

11. Eman is a determined girl. She didn't stop when she problems.
a. solved b. ate c. slept d. faced
12. Drinking little water every day can lead to serious diseases.
a. eye b. kidney c. skin d. heart
13. There are many different to solve the math problem.
a. reasons b. mistakes c. methods d. answers
14. Scientists work hard to new medicines to help sick people.
a. decorate b. deliver c. describe d. develop

15. When the car broke down in the street, it was a very difficult
 a. location b. situation c. invitation d. vacation
16. To get the opposite of this word "ease" we add the prefix
 a. im- b. dis- c. ir- d. un-

Definitions

17. means courageous and not afraid.
 a. Frightened b. Brave c. Scared d. Stone
18. To means to think someone is great or special.
 a. hate b. dislike c. admire d. kill

Expressions and prepositions

19. Good friends always care each other.
 a. to b. of c. on d. about
20. We should be kind animals and treat them kindly.
 a. to b. of c. on d. about

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

- 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

swimming - inspires - Olympics - admire - sailing

Malak is a young swimmer from Egypt, she started ① when she was five. At 17, she went to the ② People ③ her because she works hard and never gives up. She ④ young girls to follow their dreams.

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She was very to win the race, so she trained every day.
 a. confused b. relaxed c. bored d. determined
2. Doctors work hard to find cures for many dangerous
 a. exercises b. diseases c. buildings d. messages
3. With support from his family, Hossam could his fear of speaking in public.
 a. forget b. build c. overcome d. enjoy
4. Not everything you read on the internet is
 a. clean b. true c. fast d. full

5. Sara faced many when she moved to a new school, but she never gave up.
 a. books b. hobbies c. secrets d. challenges
6. The nurse gave the medicine to the in the children ward.
 a. visitor b. driver c. patient d. fire
7. Because of her hard work and, Haneen became the top student in her class.
 a. decoration b. dedication c. discussion d. information

3 Write a biography of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"describing someone you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

Who is he/she?

When/where was he/she born?

Why do you choose her/him?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Mention some qualities

- He/she is/was kind

- brave or determined

Review on Unit 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

role model (n)	قدوة / نموذج يحتذى به	determination (n)	عزم / إصرار
achievement (n)	إنجاز	courage (n)	شجاعة
brave (n)	مجتمع / جماعة	honesty (n)	أمانة
courageous (adj.)	شجاع	thinker (n)	مفكر
hero (n)	بطل	glowing (adj)	مضيء / متوهج
kind (adj)	لطيف / عطوف	nod (ded) (v)	يوميء رأسه (للموافقة)
passionate (adj)	مفعم بالمشاعر / متحمس / شغوف	grin (ned) (v)	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة
		challenges (n)	تحديات
determined (adj.)	مصمم / عاقد العزم	dedication (n)	تكريس الوقت (إخلاص العمل)
inspire (v.)(d.)	يلهم	achievement (n)	إنجاز
respect (v.)(ed)	يحترم	leader (n)	قائد
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	hero (n)	بطل
curiosity (n)	فضول	make a difference	يصنع فارق
teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي	healthier (adj)	أكثر صحة
perseverance (n)	الإصرار	admire (d) (v)	يعجب بـ
kindness (n)	الطيبة / اللطف	inspire (d) (v)	يلهم
curious (adj)	فضول	overcome (v)	يتغلب على / يقهر



Language

قواعد لغوية

The past simple

1- The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

الأفعال المنتظمة:

هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

work → worked walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن ثم حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied carry → carried

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف متحرك ثم حرف y نضيف (ed) بدون أي تغيير

enjoy → enjoyed play → played

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed)

stop → stopped control → controlled

الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

هي الأفعال التي لا يضاف لها ed في الماضي وتحفظ كما هي

go → went eat → ate do → did

am / is → was are → were have / has → had

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى في الماضي:

Ex. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city.

• يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لسرد أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي:

Ex. One day I saw a bird on a tree. It had many colors.

Affirmative الإثبات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday.

Ex. I played games last week.

Negative النفي

• بشكل عام يحول الماضي البسيط للنفي باستخدام (**didn't**) مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

→ Subject + **didn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل.

Ex. I **didn't** visit my family.

Ex. He **didn't** eat fish.

• يمكن استخدام (**never**) بدلاً من (**didn't**) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

→ Subject + **never** + الفعل في الماضي البسيط

Ex. Khalid **never** went to Aswan.

Question السؤال

السؤال بـ "هل...؟"

→ Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...؟

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did.

- No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام (**Wh-**)

→ inf....? + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What did you do yesterday?

B: We went to the park.

لاحظ في السؤال بمعنى لما لم تفعل...؟ نستخدم **didn't** في السؤال.

Ex. Why **didn't** you come yesterday?

2- Past time expressions

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	في الماضي	...ago	منذ... (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	في عام (٢٠١٠)	this morning	هذا الصباح
last...	... السابق		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

My father is my role model. He is a doctor. He is kind, honest, and always helps others. He works hard every day to support our family. I always see him solving problems with patience and a smile. He teaches me to do the right thing and never give up. His dedications and love inspire me to be a better person. He is a true hero.

Lessons 3 & 4

Values in life are important for building a better community. Kindness helps us treat others with love and respect. Being courageous allows us to face problems bravely. Dedication means working hard to achieve our goals, while being determined helps us never give up. One of the greatest values is to help the poor and support those in need.

Lessons 5 & 6

Ahmed Zewail was born in Egypt in 1946. He was curious and loved science from a young age. He studied chemistry at Alexandria university. He won the Noble prize in chemistry 1999. He was very determined and never gave up. His work inspired many young scientists around the world. He died in 2016, aged 70.

Al-Azhar Test

I like reading stories. Yesterday, I read a great story with an important value that we should learn. Two friends were walking in the forest when a wild animal appeared. One of them left his friend alone in danger. I learned to be courageous and brave not afraid.

Test on Unit 3

Egypt's role models are people who inspire others with their actions and values. Ahmed El-Mansy was a brave army officer who showed true courage and love for his country. Omar Marmoush, the famous footballer, is known for his talent and kindness. Dr. Magdy Yacoub a great heart surgeon. They make every Egyptian proud.

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- Alaa wants her daughter to be a
 a. teacher b. vet c. nurse d. doctor
- Dr. Hemdan was a
 a. rider b. writer c. reader d. driver

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman and Ahlam are talking about a film.

Eman : What are you doing, Ahlam?

Ahlam : ①

Eman : ②?

Ahlam : It is about Ahmed El-Mansy.

Eman : What did he do to be famous?

Ahlam : ③

Eman : I'm proud of him!

Ahlam : Me, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My older sister works hard, helps others, and is a great model for me.
 a. role b. rule c. ruler d. tip
- Egypt is for its ancient pyramids and long history.
 a. unknown b. known c. full d. read
- The boy began to when he heard he was going on a trip to the zoo.
 a. run b. draw c. hide d. grin
- Great teachers can their students to work hard.
 a. confuse b. repair c. inspire d. follow
- The stars were in the night sky, and everything looked magical.
 a. glowing b. falling c. flying d. turning

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Mrs. Suzan went shopping with her son. They were looking for a present for Mr. Smith's birthday. He will be fifty years old. Mrs. Suzan is five years younger than her husband. She wanted to buy him a new camera and Tom, their son, wanted to buy him a sweater. They drove to the department store on the city center. Mrs. Susan and Tom took the stairs up to the Men's clothing department on the second floor. Tom bought a nice sweater for 250 pounds. Then, they went up to the electrical department on the third floor to buy the camera. Mrs. Suzan bought a digital camera for 750 pounds, then they took the elevator down. On their way home, they stopped to buy a nice cake for the party. Mr. Smith was very pleased with the presents and they had a nice party.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How much money did Tom and his mother pay for the presents?
2. How old is Mrs. Suzan?
3. Why did Mrs. Suzan and her son buy the sweater and the camera?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They bought a on their way home.
a. sweater b. camera c. cake d. shirt
5. They went to the department store by
a. bus b. metro c. taxi d. car

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (learn) about role models in class last week. SB
2. They (have) a big dream last years. SB
3. How (do) she go to school? She went by car.
4. I (not) happy at yesterday's party.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A value you learned from a story"

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 3

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- Hassan is in prep
a. one b. two c. three d. zero
- His school life is fun and
a. buses b. lazy c. busy d. buzz
- Mr. Ahmed is very kind and
a. lazy b. clever c. cruel d. fast

B- Listen and complete:

- Hassan goes to school every
- His favorite subject is
- He loves reading about

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- An is something important you did after hard work. SB
a. agreement b. achievement c. assistant d. amazing
- To give the opposite of the word "happy" we can add the prefix
a. dis- b. in- c. ir- d. un-

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

passionate - community - determined - inspire - atomic

Dr. Samira Moussa was a true hero. She continues to ① people today. She was born in 1917 and showed a ② love for science from a young age. She was ③ to study physics. She got a Ph.D. in ④ radiation.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt has many heroes and role models throughout its long history. One of them is Dr. Samira Moussa, the first Egyptian woman to work in nuclear science. She was determined to make peaceful use of atomic energy. Born in 1917, she showed great dedication to science until her mysterious death in 1952.

Another hero is Dr. Gamal Hemdan, a famous geographer and thinker. His book

The Personality of Egypt is an important achievement. Born in 1928, he spent years studying Egypt's history, culture, and future.

Finally, Dr. Mohammed Ghoniem is one of the best kidney surgeons in the world. He is known for his hard work and kind heart. His success continues to inspire many young doctors in Egypt and beyond.

These heroes show us that with hard work and love for our country, we can do great things.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
 a. education in Egypt b. history of Egypt
 c. famous heroes in Egypt d. facts about health
2. Dr. Gamal Hemdan was born in
 a. 1917 b. 1928 c. 1952 d. 1930

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**His**" refer to?

.....

4. How old was Dr. Samira when she died?

5. What's your favorite role model from the text and why?

1000 900 800 700 600 500 400 300 200 100 0

6. Summarize the third paragraph in one sentence.

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. This morning, we _____ to the market and bought fruit.
a. go b. will go c. goes d. went
2. I _____ ready for the concert yesterday.
a. am b. is c. be d. was

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yesterday, I _____ (go) to the library.
2. The soldiers _____ (fight) bravely to protect their country in 1973.

3. She (be) a great leader in the project last year.

4. When I was young, I always (play) in the street.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya's brother, who came from France.

Aya : My last weekend was great one.

Mona : That's good. What ① you do?

Aya : My brother came from France. We met him at the ②

Mona : Does he work or study there?

Aya : He studies ③ there. He wants to be scientist.

Mona : You should be ④ of him!

Aya : Sure!

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Egypt's role models"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review (A)

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

monorail (n)	قطار احادي القضبان	device (n)	جهاز
public transportation	مواصلات عامة	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية
downtown (adv)	وسط البلد	focus (n)	تركيز
The New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الادارية الجديدة	motivation (n)	تحفيز
daily (adj)	يومي	chance (n)	فرصة
citizen (n)	مواطن	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
pollution (n)	تلوث	communication(n)	اتصال
fuel (n)	وقود	group chats	مجموعة دردشة
unlike (prep)	بخلاف	skill (n)	مهارة
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	alone (adj)	بمفرده
single rail	قضيب فردي	education (n)	التعليم
get stuck	يتعثر	consider (ed)	يعتبر
private (adj)	خاص	connect (ed)	يتصل/يربط
digital learning	التعلم الرقمي	reduce (d)	يقلل
key part	جزء رئيسي/هام	encourage (d)	يشجع
		support (ed)	يدعم

Listening

SB Page (55)

Listen to the audio text

The Cairo Monorail Project

The Cairo Monorail is considered an important transportation project in Egypt because it helps solve traffic problems and makes traveling easier for people in crowded cities like Cairo. It connects important areas such as downtown Cairo with Giza and the New Administrative Capital.

The monorail will improve the daily life of Egyptian citizens in many ways. First, it will reduce travel time, making it faster for people to move between different parts of the city. Second, it will help reduce pollution because it uses electricity instead of fuel.

استمع إلى النص



There are some main differences between the monorail and other types of public transportation. Unlike traditional trains or buses, the monorail runs above the ground on a single rail, so it doesn't get stuck in traffic. Also, it's faster, quieter, and more modern than older systems.

One of the project's goals is to encourage people to use public transportation instead of private cars. This helps reduce traffic and protect the environment. The monorail is a smart and clean way to travel in Egypt's big cities.



Lesson 1 page 55 Exercise 3

Digital learning has become a key part of modern education. With devices like tablets, smartboards, and smartphones, students can learn anywhere and work with others around the world. Online learning needs focus and motivation, but it also gives students the chance to learn in their own way.

Technology helps improve communication through apps and group chats, and it builds important skills. However, technology alone isn't enough-teachers and community support are still very important in education.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the list below:

smartboard - sad - respect - kinesthetic - goal - cheerful - achievement

1. My main _____ for this year is to learn to search online.
2. The students used the _____ to share their ideas in the classroom.
3. She is always _____, even when things are difficult.
4. Many people prefer _____ learning, where they learn by doing activities.
5. It's important to show _____ for different cultures.
6. Winning the championship was a huge _____ for the team.
7. She looked _____ when she heard the bad news.

Technology has changed the way students learn. With devices like tablets and laptops, they can access information easily and learn at their own speed. Different students learn in different ways-some by seeing, some by listening, and others by doing activities. Modern classrooms now have smartboards and video calls, which help students learn better and connect with people around the world.

But there are also problems. Students need to learn how to use technology wisely and stay focused without getting distracted. Still, technology makes learning more interesting and helps students get ready for the future. A good mix of old and new learning methods is important.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students use digital devices like tablets and laptops to
 - a. play games in class
 - b. take breaks from learning
 - c. access information and communicate
 - d. avoid doing homework
2. One challenge of digital learning is that students must
 - a. stop using the internet completely
 - b. learn to use technology wisely and stay focused
 - c. ignore their classmates
 - d. study only with books

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Mention some digital devices students use to learn today.
-
4. Name three types of learning styles mentioned in the text.
-
5. How do modern classrooms use technology to improve learning?

Ahmed : Hi Mariam! What are you doing? You look very focused.

Mariam : Hi Ahmed! I'm actually trying to organize my notes for the history project.

It's a bit of a challenge.

Ahmed : 1 _____ ?

Mariam : Oh, thank you! I'm using a new app that helps create mind maps.



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea and at least two specific details in a text about your choices
- Use context clues to understand vocabulary related to making smart choices

Listening:

- Identify the main idea in conversations about making difficult choices
- Find specific details about options and advice in situations

Speaking:

- Talk about personal daily choices
- Give and ask for advice using "should"

Language:

- Identify and create first conditional sentences to talk about future possibilities
- Use "should and shouldn't" for advice

Writing:

- Write a blog post about a personal problem



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

decision (n)	قرار	goal (n)	هدف
responsible (adj)	مسؤول	benefit (n)	فائدة
left out (adj)	مستبعد/منبوذ	invite (d)	يدعو
careless (adj)	مهمل	join (ed)	يشارك
irresponsible (adj)	مستهتر (غير مسؤول)	behave (d)	يتصرف
positive (adj)	إيجابي	encourage (d)	يشجع
negative (adj)	سلبي	improve (d)	يتحسن
dilemma (n)	مازق/مشكلة/حيرة	evaluate (d)	يقدر/يقيم
consequence (n)	عاقبة/نتيجة		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

option (n)	بديل / اختيار	proud (adj)	فخور
result (n)	نتيجة	smart (adj)	ذكي
surprise (n)	مفاجأة	carefully (adv)	بحرص/بعناية
side (n)	جانب	explain (ed)	يشرح
action (n)	فعل	act (ed)	يتعامل
effect (n)	أثر/تأثير	achieve (d)	يحقق/ينجز
competition (n)	مسابقة	avoid (ed)	يتجنب
injury (n)	إصابة	harmful (adj)	سئ
classmate (n)	زميل	experience (n)	تجربة حياتية
success (n)	نجاح	care (n)	عناية / رعاية
polite (adj)	مهذب	affect (ed)	يؤثر على
healthy (adj)	صحي	train (ed)	يتدرب
close (adj)	مقرب	skip (ped)	يفوت
uncomfortable (adj)	منزعج (غير مرتاح)	cause (d)	يسبب
rejected (adj)	مرفوض / منبوذ		

Definitions

decision	قرار	a choice you can make
evaluate	يقدر / يقيم	to think carefully before deciding
positive	إيجابي	a good or helpful result
negative	سلبي	bad or harmful
responsible	مسؤول	to act with care and think of others
careless	مهمل	not caring about your actions
goal	هدف	something you want to achieve
consequence	عاقبة / نتيجة	the result or effect of an action
benefit	فائدة	to be useful to someone

Expressions & Prepositions

make / take a decision	يتخذ قرار	face / have a problem	يواجه / لديه مشكلة
excited about	متحمس بشأن	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
close to	مقرب لـ	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
feel left out	يشعر بأنه منبوذ	care about	يعتنى بـ
think about/ of	يفكر في	make a choice	يتخذ قرار
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	study for a test	يذاكر للاختبار
lead to	يؤدي إلى	waste time	يهدر الوقت
focus on	يركز على	be healthy / strong	يبقى بصحة / قوياً
		cross the road	يعبر الطريق



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
last	آخر	final		first	أول
positive	إيجابي	good		negative	سلبي
pass	ينجح	succeed		fail	يرسب / يفشل
careful	حريص	cautious		careless	مهمل
consequence	عاقبة	result		cause	سبب
responsible	مسؤول	reliable		careless	مهمل

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	un comfortable
-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	careful ly
-ful	تحويل الاسم / الفعل إلى صفة	harm ful / use ful / care ful
-less	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	care less

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
let	يسمح/يدع	let	let
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
tell	يخبر	told	told
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
win	يفوز	won	won



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 who

- تستخدم كاسم موصول مع الأشخاص لتعطي معلومة إضافية عنهم

Ex He invited eight close friends **who** had been responsible in class.

2 ask to and ask for

• **ask to + inf.** يطلب أن**Ex.** Two classmates **asked to** join.• **ask for + noun** يطلب**Ex.** Who do you **ask for** advice when making a decision?

3 make + noun/pronoun + adj. يجعل

• **let + noun/ pronoun + inf.** يسمح/يدع**Ex.** If I let them come, the party may become big and **make** others uncomfortable.

4 encourage + someone + to + inf. يشجع شخص على

Ex. He **encouraged** the boys to be more responsible in the future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mom always encouraged me
a. study b. to study c. studying d. studied
2. The school trip made me
a. tire b. tiring c. tired d. tires
3. I met a girl spoke three languages.
a. who b. when c. how d. where



Reading



SB Page (60)



استمع إلى النصوص

Read the following text. How many people did Youssef invite to his party?

Youssef was **excited about**⁽¹⁾ his birthday and planned a small party after school. He **invited**⁽²⁾ eight close friends who had been **responsible**⁽³⁾ in class and finished their homework. A day before the party, two **classmates**⁽⁴⁾ asked to **join**⁽⁵⁾. They weren't very **close to**⁽⁶⁾ Youssef, and one had been **careless**⁽⁷⁾ in class. Youssef faced a difficult **decision**⁽⁸⁾. He thought, and said "If I let the party may become too big and make others **uncomfortable**⁽⁹⁾," "And if I say no, the two may feel **left out**⁽¹⁰⁾." He carefully thought about the **positive**⁽¹¹⁾ and **negative**⁽¹²⁾ sides of each choice. In the end, Youssef made a responsible and **polite**⁽¹³⁾ decision. He explained that the party was only for close friends who had **behaved well**⁽¹⁴⁾ and he **encouraged**⁽¹⁵⁾ the boys to be more responsible in the future. To his surprise, they understood and respected his decision. One even promised to improve. The party was a **success**⁽¹⁶⁾, and Youssef felt proud and said, "If everyone thinks well before taking a decision, they won't **make mistakes**⁽¹⁷⁾."

١. متحمس بشأن
٢. دعى
٣. مسؤول
٤. زملاء
٥. يشارك
٦. مقرب من
٧. مهمل
٨. قرار
٩. منزعج (غير مرتاح)
١٠. يشعر بأنه مستبعد
١١. إيجابي
١٢. سلبي
١٣. مهذب
١٤. تصرف بشكل جيد
١٥. شجع
١٦. نجاح
١٧. يرتكب خطأ

Reading Skill

مهارات القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- Youssef was about his birthday party. كان يوسف بشأن حفلة عيد ميلاده
a. angry b. worried c. excited d. polite
- 2- How many friends did Youssef invite to his birthday party? كم عدد الأصدقاء الذين دعاهم يوسف لحفلة عيد ميلاده؟
- 3- What is the main idea of the text? ما هي الفكرة الأساسية للنص؟

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (أجل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- Youssef was excited about his birthday.
- He planned a small party after school.
- He invited his close friends to his birthday party.
- The party was a success and Youssef felt proud.

- كان يوسف متحمسا لعيد ميلاده
- خطط لإقامة حفلة صغيرة بعد المدرسة
- دعا أصدقاءه المقربين إلى حفلة عيد ميلاده
- كانت الحفلة ناجحة وشعر يوسف بالفخر

- Answers:
- 1- c) excited.
- 2- Youssef invited 8 friends to his birthday party.
- 3- The main idea of the text is that thinking carefully before deciding helps avoid problems and keeps everyone happy.



2. Listen to the text

Every day, we make many decisions. Some are small, like choosing clothes. Others are big, and can affect our future. Making smart choices is important because all choices have consequences.

A smart choice can **lead to**⁽¹⁾ good results, while a **poor choice**⁽²⁾ might **cause**⁽³⁾ problems. To make smart choices, **consider**⁽⁴⁾ all your options. Then, you should think about the possible consequences of each option. Also, try to **focus on**⁽⁵⁾ what is most important for your future. For example, if you choose to finish your homework before playing, it will benefit your **grades**⁽⁶⁾. Remember, smart choices help us reach our goals and live happier lives.

١. يؤدي إلى
٢. اختيار سيئ (غير موفق)
٣. يسبب
٤. يضع في الاعتبار
٥. يركز على
٦. درجاتك



3. 'Listen to Akmal's blog post about his decision

Yesterday, I had to make a smart choice. My friends wanted to go to the park, but I had a test today. I really wanted to go, but I remembered my teacher's advice "Think about tomorrow, not just today".

I stayed home and studied. Today, I passed my test with a high score! I felt proud because I made the right decision. Smart choices are not always easy, but they help us reach our goals. Now, my friends are proud of me too.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Omar is very _____, he always finishes his homework on time.
a. negative b. careless c. harmful d. responsible
2. Every action has a _____, so think before you act.
a. cause b. consequence c. problem d. success
3. He made a good _____ to study before the test.
a. consequence b. goal c. decision d. experience
4. The synonym of "consequence" is _____.
a. result b. cause c. care d. decision
5. I try to stay _____ even when things are difficult.
a. negative b. sad c. positive d. asleep
6. Regular exercise has many health _____.
a. benefits. b. negatives
c. disadvantages d. problems
7. If you think carefully before you decide, you will _____ problems.
a. face b. encourage c. have d. avoid
8. Our decisions _____ our future.
a. affect b. solve c. improve d. effect
9. Before you buy a new phone, you should _____ all the different models.
a. evaluate b. behave c. encourage d. respect

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Salma and her cousin are very _____; they talk daily and share everything.
a. distant b. careful c. close d. difficult
11. _____ comes from hard work.
a. Consequence b. Success c. Mistake d. Problem
12. I always feel _____ in noisy places.
a. responsible b. careless c. healthy d. uncomfortable
13. My _____ is to improve my English skills.
a. goal b. experience c. consequence d. option
14. We _____ everyone to join the game.
a. faced b. improved c. respected d. invited

15. Please well during the school trip.
 a. evaluate b. behave c. invite d. face
16. Parents should kids to read books.
 a. avoid b. promise c. decide d. encourage
17. Sara felt after winning the race.
 a. proud b. careless c. careful d. uncomfortable
18. Laila sometimes feels when her friends make plans without her.
 a. rejected b. responsible c. close d. careful

Expressions & prepositions

19. If he thinks well before taking a decision, he won't make
 a. benefits b. mistakes c. actions d. goals
20. The students were excited the school trip.
 a. for b. about c. with d. of
21. My little sister always asks advice before deciding.
 a. to b. in c. for d. at
22. Hany a smart decision about his future.
 a. thought b. made c. felt d. understood

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

smart - In - positive - classmate - On - negative

Yesterday, I made an important decision to study for a test instead of going to a party. I asked my ① for help and felt proud when I understood everything. I know it was a ② choice. ③ the end, my teacher said I did well. I hope my hard work will bring success and ④ results in the future.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona faced a problem yesterday.

Amina : You look worried. What's wrong?

Mona : I faced a ① yesterday and didn't know what to do.

Amina : ② happened? Tell me more.

Mona : I had to choose between going to a birthday party or finishing my homework.

Amina : That's a difficult ③ What did you do?

Unit 4 Smart Choices

Mona : I thought carefully and chose to stay home and study.

Amina : 4 you feel proud after that?

Mona : Yes, I felt very proud.



Language

قواعد لغوية

1. The first conditional "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة لحدث ما (أي انها تعبر عن نتيجة ستحدث إذا تحقق شرط معين).

Ex. If you **study hard**, you **will pass** the test.

شرط نتيجة

Ex. If Ali **finishes** his homework early, we **will go** to the club.

Form التكوين

If / When + subject + present simple subject +
will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Subject + **will / won't** + inf. مصدر الفعل + if / when + subject +
present simple مضارع بسيط

Ex. If / When you **eat** less sugar, you **will be** healthy and strong.

Ex. If / When Noha **doesn't have** her breakfast, she **won't feel** good.

Ex. You **will be** healthy and strong **if/ when** you **eat** less sugar.

في السؤال يتم استخدام **if / when** كالتالي:

Will + subject+ inf. + if / when + subject + present simple?
Wh. word + will + subject+ inf. + if / when + subject + present simple?

Ex. Will you **go** to the club **if** you **finish** your homework early?

Ex. What **will** you **do** **if** you **finish** your homework early?

Usage الاستخدام

2. Should / Shouldn't يجب / لا يجب

We use should/ shouldn't for advice.

نستخدم **should / shouldn't** لإعطاء النصيحة .

Form التكوين

Subject + should/ shouldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. You **should** **study** hard.

Ex. You **should** **visit** the doctor.

Ex. You **shouldn't** **waste** your time.

Ex. You **shouldn't** **eat** a lot of sweets.

و نكون سؤال كالتالي:

Should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Wh. word + should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. **Should** I **visit** the doctor?

Ex. **When should** I **visit** the doctor?

لاحظ يمكن استخدام **should** مع **if** :

Ex. You **should** **be** careful **when** you **cross** the road.

Ex. What **should** I **do** **if** I **feel** sick?

لاحظ لا تستخدم **to** بعد **should** :

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bit by Bit Exercises

1. If it rains tomorrow, we at home.

- a. stays b. stayed c. will stay d. staying

2. Mayar will miss the bus if she up late.

- a. wake b. wakes c. woke d. waking

3. If they don't study, they the exam.

- a. won't pass b. will pass c. pass d. not pass

4. What will you do if your team the match?

- a. won b. wins c. winning d. will win

5. Adel a new bike when he has enough money.

- a. will buy b. buys c. bought d. buying

6. We will be late if we now.

- a. didn't leave b. don't leave c. won't leave d. not leaving

7. What if you don't finish your homework?

- a. will happen b. happen c. happened d. is happening

Unit 4 Smart Choices

8. Shahenda angry if you break her toy.
a. be b. is c. was d. will be
9. We dinner when dad gets home.
a. will have b. had c. has d. having
10. If I her, she will be angry.
a. won't call b. doesn't call c. not call d. don't call
11. You eat vegetables every day to be healthy and strong.
a. shouldn't b. won't c. should d. don't
12. If you're tired, you go to bed late.
a. won't b. shouldn't c. will d. should
13. You be polite to your classmates.
a. should b. won't c. shouldn't d. aren't
14. We drink a lot of water when it's hot.
a. shouldn't b. should c. won't d. don't
15. She eat too many sweets. It's bad for her teeth.
a. don't b. shouldn't c. won't d. should
16. You go to the bed early before the test.
a. shouldn't b. can't c. should d. won't
17. If she eats too much candy, she sick.
a. will feel b. feel c. felt d. feeling
18. If she late, the teacher will be angry.
a. was b. is c. be d. are
19. When we arrive at the park, we a game.
a. plays b. will play c. played d. playing
20. Hany take a break because he feels tired.
a. shouldn't b. can't c. won't d. should

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. If I have a school trip, I (would) get up very early.
2. You'll (won) the competition if you train well.

3. If he (isn't) do his homework, his teacher will be angry.
4. What should I (did) to stay healthy?
5. If I study hard, I (get) good grades.
6. You (should asking) your parents for advice.
7. If he (not come), we'll leave without him.

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Students should (listening) carefully to their teachers.
9. I should talk to my friend if she (be) sad.
10. If we (not hurry), we will miss the bus.
11. Hany should (took) a break because he feels tired.
12. If she doesn't understand, she (shouldn't) ask the teacher.

Speaking

1 Ask and answer about a problem you faced

السؤال والإجابة عن مشكلة/ موقف صعب واجهتها.

Question

1- Have you ever had a problem?

هل واجهت يوماً مشكلة (سببت لك الحيرة)؟

2- What was the problem?

ما المشكلة التي واجهتها؟

3- Who helped you solve it?

من ساعدك في حلها؟

4- What lesson did you learn from it?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمته؟

Answer

- Yes, I have had a problem.

نعم لقد واجهت مشكلة

- I had to choose between studying for a test or going to my friend's birthday party.

كان علي أن أختار بين المذاكرة للاختبار أو الذهاب إلى عيد ميلاد صديقتي.

- My (sister/ mom/ dad) helped me solve it.

ساعدتني (أختي/ أمي/ أبي) في حل المشكلة.

- I learned to think well before making a decision.

تعلمت أن أفكر جيداً قبل اتخاذ أي قرار.

2 Ask and answer about daily choices

السؤال و الإجابة عن الاختيارات اليومية

Question

Answer

1- What do you usually have to choose?

ما الذى عليك أن تختاره عادة؟

- I usually choose my study time.

عادة أختار وقت المذاكرة

2-What daily choices do you have to make?

ما الاختيارات اليومية التى عليك أن تتخذها؟

- I often make decisions like "What to eat, when to sleep, and how to study."

غالبًا ما أتخذ قرارات مثل: "ماذا أكل، متى أنام، وكيف أذاكر."

3- How can I make smart decisions?

كيف يمكننى اتخاذ قرارات ذكية؟

- You can ask for advice.

يمكنك أن تطلب النصيحة.

- You can think carefully before you decide.

يمكنك أن تفكر جيدًا قبل أن تتخذ القرار.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- A "-----" means a choice you can make.
a. consequence b. decision c. problem d. goal
- When you ----- a problem, think carefully before you decide.
a. make b. train c. skip d. face
- To my surprise, my friends understood and ----- my decision.
a. rejected b. respected c. hated d. joined
- Be careful when you cross the road. The antonym of "careful" is -----.
a. cautious b. careless c. useful d. helpful
- Hazem didn't think ----- the consequences of his mistake.
a. for b. off c. about d. in

Language

6. You waste time playing computer games.
 a. should b. will c. shouldn't d. not
7. If we leave now, we the bus.
 a. will catch b. won't catch c. don't catch d. not catch
8. Will she feel proud if she the competition?
 a. will win b. wins c. win d. won
9. Hala and Basma will a picnic if the weather nice.
 a. has b. have c. had d. having

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solve - polite - careless - invite - behave

Last month, I had a problem with a close friend. She didn't ① me to her party, and I felt rejected. I didn't know how to ② I talked to my mom, and she told me to stay ③ and talk to my friend. We talked, and she explained everything. I learned that good friends always ④ problems.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I (saw) him, I will tell him the news.
2. They (should) shout in class.
3. You will make a mistake if you (not listen) carefully.
4. You should (brushing) your teeth twice a day.
5. Where (you go) if you have a day off?

4 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Mariam are talking about a problem Mariam faced.

Salma : Have you ever had a problem?

Mariam : ①, I had to choose between studying or going to a party.

Salma : Who helped you ② it?

Mariam : My sister helped me.

Unit 4 Smart Choices

Salma : 3 do you usually choose each day?

Mariam : I usually choose when to study and what to eat.

Salma : How can we make good choices?

Mariam : We should think first and ask for 4

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A smart choice you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What was the smart choice you made?
- When did you make it?
- Did you ask anyone for advice?
- What were the consequences for this choice?
- How did you feel?



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	lead (n) (v)	قيادة/مقدمة/يقود
wise (adj)	حكيم	give up (v)	يستسلم
race (n)	سباق	fair (n/ adj)	معرض/ عادل
training (n)	تدريب	honesty (n)	نزاهة/ أمانة
risk (n)	خطر	honest (adj)	صادق
problem-solving skills	مهارات حل المشكلات	judgment (n)	حكم/ تقييم
influence (n)	تأثير	eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة
impact (n)	اثر/ تأثير	injure (d) (n)	يصيب/ يلحق الأذى / لصابة
decision (n)	قرار	recover (ed)	يتعافى/ يشفى
problem (n)	مشكلة	create (d)	يبتكر/ ينشئ
consequences (n)	عواقب	ignore (d)	يتجاهل

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

interviewer (n)	محاوِر/ مذيِع	matter (ed)	يهم
coach (n)	مدرب	fail (ed)	يفشل
fully (adv)	تماماً/ بشكل كامل	friendship (n)	الصداقة
gold (n)	ذهب	invention (n)	اختراع
personal letter (n)	خطاب شخصي	dream team (n)	فريق الحلم
accident (n)	حادثة	annual (adj)	سنوي
cheerful (adj)	مبهج	water-saving machine (n)	آلة توفير الماء
role (n)	دور	medal (n)	ميدالية
materials (n)	مواد	gently (adv)	برفق/ بلطف
pipes (n)	أنابيب	invent (ed)	يخترع
water flow (n)	تدفق الماء	refuse (d)	يرفض
rest (ed)	يستريح	agree (d)	يوافق
miss (ed)	يفوت	design (ed)	يصمم



Definitions

create	ينشئ/يبتكر	to make or invent something new	Arabic Meaning ١. اهتمام ٢. مبادئ أخلاقية
ignore	يتجاهل	not to listen or give attention ⁽¹⁾ to someone or something	
honesty	نزاهة/أمانة	being honest and having strong moral principles ⁽²⁾	
give up	يقطع عن/يتوقف عن	to stop	
risk	خطر	the chance of something bad happening	

Expressions & Prepositions

ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	on my way to	في مساري نحو
take a risk	يخطر	have a big influence on	له تأثير كبير على
take part in	يشارك في	have an impact on	له تأثير على
make up your mind	يقرر/يحسم قراره	take the lead	يتولى القيادة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	give a chance	يمنح الفرصة
get a rest	يحصل على الراحة	step by step	خطوة بخطوة
have moral principles	لديه مبادئ أخلاقية	give attention	يعطي اهتمامًا
		have a role	له دور



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
tough	صعب	hard		easy	سهل
wise	حكيم	sensible		foolish	أحمق
agree	يوافق	accept		disagree/ refuse	يرفض
chance	فرصة	opportunity			

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف	quick ly gent ly wis ly
eco-	تعني يتعلق بالبيئة أو الطبيعة	eco -friendly
re	تعني يعيد عمل	re cover

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة	
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
run	يجري	ran	run
build	يبني	built	built
keep	يستمر	kept	kept



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 Could you please + inf. مصدر الفعل؟

- تستخدم لطلب شيء بشكل مهذب.

Ex. Could you please help me?

2 before / during

• before + noun / complete sentence

Ex. I faced a problem before a big race.

Ex. Before I started training, I had a bad injury.

• during + noun

Ex. I injured my foot during training.

لاحظ ان during لا ياتي بعدها الفعل مضاف اليه
ing لكن كلمة training هنا اسم

3 keep + v.ing يستمر

Ex. When their ideas failed at first, they kept trying.

4 The more + جملة , the (more / adj.er) + جملة

- تستخدم هذه القاعدة لربط شيئين متغيرين معًا: عندما يزداد الأول، يزداد الثاني أيضا.

Ex. The more they worked together, the stronger their friendship became.

5 influence / impact تأثير

• influence

- تشير إلى القدرة على التأثير في رأي أو سلوك شخص و عادة يكون التأثير غير مباشر.

Ex. I talked to my coach, who had a big influence on me.

- تأثير في رأي شخص و النتيجة ليست دائما ملحوظة وواضحة.

• impact

- يشير إلى النتيجة / التغيير الملحوظ نتيجة لحدث أو فعل ما و عادة يكون التأثير قويًا و ملحوظًا

Ex. The impact was positive because I recovered , and I won a gold medal in the next race.

- التأثير نتيجته واضحة و ملحوظة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Could you please me with this problem?
a. help b. helps c. helped d. helping
2. The more she studied, the she became.
a. smart b. smarter c. smartest d. smarter than
3. We must keep until we succeed.
a. work b. worked c. working d. works



Reading



SB Page (64)



استمع إلى النصوص

Read the following dialog. What is the name of the athlete?

A Wise Decision?

Interviewer : Today we are talking to Adam, a **young athlete**⁽¹⁾, about a **wise**⁽²⁾ decision he had to make. Adam, could you please tell us about it?

Adam : Last year, I faced a problem before a big race. I **injured**⁽³⁾ my foot during **training**⁽⁴⁾. I had to choose between **taking a risk**⁽⁵⁾ and **taking part in**⁽⁶⁾ a race, or resting and missing it.

Interviewer : That's tough. What helped you **make up your mind**⁽⁷⁾?

Adam : I used **problem-solving skills**⁽⁸⁾. I talked to my coach, who had a big **influence**⁽⁹⁾ on me. We discussed the possible consequences. I thought, and said "If I run, it will make the **injury**⁽¹⁰⁾ worse." And "If I rest, I will **recover**⁽¹¹⁾ fully for the next race."

Interviewer : What did you decide?

Adam : I decided I shouldn't run. It was a wise choice. The **impact**⁽¹²⁾ was positive because I recovered, and I won a **gold medal**⁽¹³⁾ in the next race.

Interviewer : What advice can you give to young athletes?

Adam : You should think carefully and ask for advice before taking a risk. If you make a wise decision, you will have a better future in sports.

- ١- لاعب رياضي
- ٢- حكيم/عقل
- ٣- يصيب/يؤذي
- ٤- تدريب
- ٥- يخاطر
- ٦- يشارك في
- ٧- يتخذ قرار
- ٨- مهارات حل
- المشكلات
- ٩- تأثير
- ١٠- الإصابة
- ١١- يتعافى
- ١٢- أثر/تأثير
- ١٣- ميدالية ذهبية

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The interview is mainly about a
a. foolish decision b. big impact c. wise decision d. famous athlete
- Find from the passage an expression which means "make a decision"
a. take part in b. have influence on c. take a risk d. make up your mind
- Who has a big influence on the athlete?

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (اجمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

- Last year, I faced a problem before a big race. في العام الماضي، واجهت مشكلة سببت لي الحيرة قبل سباق كبير.
- I injured my foot during training. - أصبت قدمي أثناء التدريب.
- I had to choose between taking part in a race or resting and missing it. - كان علي أن أختار بين المشاركة في السباق أو الراحة وتفويته.
- I decided I shouldn't run and it was a wise choice. - قررت أنني لا يجب أن أشارك، وكان ذلك اختيارًا حكيمًا.

2. d. make up your mind

3. The athlete's coach
1. c. wise decision

Answers:

Story Time The Magic Classroom



Before you read, discuss in pairs

Chapter One

Never Give Up

In the cheerful village, there is an **annual invention fair**⁽¹⁾. The children were excited to **create**⁽²⁾ something useful. Sara, Omar, Zain, and two new friends, Lily and Karim, decided to build a **water-saving machine**⁽³⁾.

In their first **meeting**⁽⁴⁾, Omar wanted to finish quickly and **take the lead**⁽⁵⁾. Lily felt **left out**⁽⁶⁾ because her ideas were **ignored**⁽⁷⁾. Sara stopped and said gently, "We need to be **fair**⁽⁸⁾. Everyone's ideas **matter**⁽⁹⁾. We are a team."

Karim added wisely, "We must have **honesty**⁽¹⁰⁾. Let's make honest choices and think carefully."

They all agreed to respect each other and give everyone a **chance**⁽¹¹⁾ to speak. Even when their ideas failed at first, they kept trying. "**determination**⁽¹²⁾" Sara reminded them. "We can't **give up**⁽¹³⁾."

١. معرض الاختراع السنوي
٢. يخلق/يبتكر
٣. آلة توفير الماء
٤. اجتماع
٥. يتولى القيادة
٦. مستبعد/منبوذ
٧. تم تجاهلها
٨. عادل
٩. يهم
١٠. نزاهة/امانة
١١. فرصة
١٢. إصرار/عزيمة
١٣. يستسلم/يتوقف عن



Together, they used their **curiosity**⁽¹⁴⁾ and good **judgment**⁽¹⁵⁾ to improve the machine **step by step**⁽¹⁶⁾. Each member of the team had a **role**⁽¹⁷⁾. Zain **designed the model**⁽¹⁸⁾. Omar fixed the **pipes**⁽¹⁹⁾. Lily suggested **eco-friendly materials**⁽²⁰⁾. Karim tested the water flow and Sara kept everyone organized.

The more they worked together, the stronger their friendship became.

١٤. فضول
١٥. حكم/تقييم
١٦. خطوة بخطوة
١٧. دور
١٨. صمم النموذج
١٩. أصلح الأنابيب
٢٠. مواد صديقة للبيئة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

- Climbing the mountain without a guide is a big
a. consequence b. risk c. honesty d. influence
- Mr. Nader is a wise man. What is an antonym of wise?
a. sensible b. active c. foolish d. terrible
- "....." is to make or invent something.
a. Create b. Recover c. Ignore d. Fix
- "....." means being honest and having strong moral principles.
a. Judgment b. Determination c. Honesty d. Curiosity
- To is not to listen or give attention to someone or something.
a. injure b. remind c. invent d. ignore

Bit by Bit Exercises

- The young trained daily to take part in the annual race.
a. interviewer b. coach c. athlete d. climber
- We had a with the coach to talk about teamwork.
a. friendship b. model c. meeting d. judgment
- grew among the team members as they trained together.
a. Curiosity b. Friendship c. Influence d. Failure
- Her helped her recover fully and return to sport.
a. honesty b. judgment c. model d. determination
- The team met every morning for in the village.
a. training b. resting c. creating d. recovering
- The team used their problem-solving to fix the broken pipes.
a. inventions b. medals c. skills d. letters

12. They each other to stay calm whey they faced a problem.
 a. agreed b. suggested c. reminded d. ignored
13. After weeks of rest, the athlete and returned stronger.
 a. invented b. refused c. ignored d. recovered
14. They designed a/an invention to save water in the village. It is good for the enviroment.
 a. cheerful b. eco -friendly c. annual d. honest
15. The team created a new idea for the science
 a. fare b. fail c. fair d. fall
16. Every team member to the coach.
 a. matters b. fails c. rests d. reminds
17. The teacher was and gave everyone a chance to answer.
 a. fair b. curious c. negative d. greedy

Expressions & prepositions

18. You need to up your mind-will you join the dream team or not?
 a. take b. have c. do d. make
19. The eco-friendly invention had an impact saving water in our village.
 a. of b. in c. on d. at
20. At the end of the race, Sara the lead and won the gold medal.
 a. took b. gave c. did d. made
21. He a risk by testing the new machine during the annual fair.
 a. made b. took c. did d. refused
22. The coach had a big on his players' future.
 a. influence b. advice c. problem d. chance

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

decision - injury - recover - fair - impact - risk

SB

Last summer, I had to make a big ① I wanted to take part in a competition. I asked my father's advice who had a great influence on my decision. Before I starting training, I had a bad injury I couldn't take a ② and play but I got a rest which helped me to ③ This accident had a great ④ on my way of taking decisions.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Mayar about a wise decision she made.

Omar : Could you tell me about a wise decision you made?

Mayar : Yes, of ① I decided not to join a big race.

Omar : ②?

Mayar : Because I injured my foot during training.

Omar : That's tough. What helped you make up your mind?

Mayar : I used ③ skills and talked to my coach.

Omar : Great! What advice can you ④ to me about making decisions?

Mayar : Think carefully and ask someone for advice.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The wise coach helped the team win. The synonym of "wise" is
a. sensible b. foolish c. active d. stupid
- Everyone in the team has a to play.
a. ruler b. rule c. role d. roll
- Many young athletes wanted to take part the village's big race.
a. at b. on c. in d. off
- Maged is always and tells the truth.
a. cheerful b. foolish c. careless d. honest
- The new water-saving helps the village.
a. machine b. skill c. article d. flow
- I felt when my friends played without me.
a. organized b. cheerful c. proud d. left out
- The coach told us never to
a. rest b. matter c. give up d. agree
- The team worked together to the model.
a. give b. design c. miss d. ignore



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary



effectively (adv)	بشكل فعال/ بكفاءة	stressed (adj)	متوتر مضغوط
worried (adj)	قلق	free time (n)	وقت الفراغ
schoolwork (n)	العمل/ الواجبات المدرسية	hobby (n)	هواية
whether	ما إذا	explore (d)	يستكشف
later (adv)	لاحقًا	receive (d)	يستلم
project (n)	مشروع	save (d)	يحفظ
blog post (n)	مدونة/ منشور		

Expressions & Prepositions

nervous about	متوتر بشأن	come up	يقرب
end up	ينتهي به الأمر بـ	get ready	يستعد
ask for advice	طلب النصح	waste time	يهدر الوقت
giving advice	إسداء النصح		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
leave	يترك	left	left



Writing Skills

Blog Post منشور في مدونة إلكترونية

• هو مقال أو موضوع ينشر على الإنترنت و هي تشبه دفترًا رقميًا يكتب فيه الشخص عن شيء يهتم به .

Tips for writing a blog post خطوات كتابة منشور في مدونة إلكترونية

- 1- Start with a title that gets people interested.
- 2- Give details about the topic.
- 3- Use images related to the topic.
- 4- End with a call to action

أبدأ بعنوان يجذب انتباه الناس
قدم تفاصيل حول الموضوع
استخدم صورًا مرتبطة بالموضوع
اختتم بدعوة لاتخاذ إجراء

- **Example:** Write a blog post about a problem you faced.

A problem I faced

I faced a problem before a big race. I injured my foot during training and felt sharp pain in my foot. I had to choose between taking a risk and taking part in the race or resting and missing it. I used problem-solving skills and talked to my coach, who had a big influence on me. We discussed the possible consequences. I decided I shouldn't run. It was a wise choice. The impact was positive because I recovered and won a gold medal in the next race. I was very proud. You should think carefully and ask for advice before taking a risk.

Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

- **We use an exclamation point (!):** نستخدم علامة التعجب (!):

at the end of a sentence to express **strong emotion or emphasis - such as surprise, excitement, anger, or joy.**

في نهاية الجملة للتعبير عن مشاعر قوية أو تأكيد - مثل المفاجأة، الحماس، الغضب، أو الفرح.

- **Examples:**

- The movie was fantastic!

- Be careful. The roof is wet!

- بعد أن تنتهي من كتابة فقرة تأكد من أنك قمت بوضع علامات الترقيم بشكل صحيح.

Practice

Add the correct punctuation (:), comma(,), period(.), question mark(?) or exclamation point(!) to the following sentences.

1. I like pizza ice cream and cake

2. Where is my pencil

3. Wow that's a big dog

4. My brother has two cats

5. Do you like to play football

Read each situation below and write a piece of advice to help your friend:

1. Rodina is nervous about a big test coming up and doesn't know how to study effectively. She asks for advice.

Advice: You should make a study schedule and review your notes every day.

2. Roqia spends a lot of time playing video games and is worried it might be affecting her schoolwork.

Advice: You shouldn't waste your time playing video games.

3. Your friend received some money for their birthday. They want advice on whether to spend it now or save it for something bigger later.

Advice: You should save the money for something bigger later.

4. Your friend always leaves their school projects to the last minute and ends up stressed.

Advice: You should start your projects earlier.

5. Your friend isn't sure what to do in his/her free time and wants to explore new hobbies but doesn't know where to start.

Advice: You should try joining a new club or class.

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My brother felt _____ before the final exam. He was worried.
a. cheerful b. organized c. stressed d. hopeful
- In my _____ I enjoy reading books.
a. free time b. schoolwork c. study time d. work time
- He was nervous _____ speaking in front of the class.
a. for b. with c. about d. of
- We _____ the old village during our trip.
a. explored b. received c. spent d. rested
- If you don't study, you'll _____ failing.
a. come up b. get ready c. end up d. work on
- Hana _____ a gift from her teacher because she got high grades.
a. spent b. received c. explored d. forgot

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If the weather is bad, they _____ (not go) on the trip.
- We should _____ (helping) our classmates during group work.
- When she _____ (get) home, she will cook dinner.
- What will Omar _____ (did) if the match is cancelled?
- Salma _____ (should) stay up late before a big test.

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) about:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A problem you faced"

Review on Unit 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

decision (n)	قرار	impact (n)	اثر/تأثير
responsible (adj)	مسؤول	medal (n)	ميدالية
left out (adj)	مستبعد/منبوذ	fair (n/ adj)	معروض/عادل
careless (adj)	مهمل	honesty (n)	نزاهة/أمانة
irresponsible (adj)	مستهتر (غير مسؤول)	honest (adj)	صادق
positive (adj)	إيجابي	judgment (n)	حكم/تقييم
negative (adj)	سلبي	eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة
dilemma (n)	مازق/مشكلة/حيرة	injure (d)	يصيب/يلحق الأذى
consequence (n)	عاقبة/نتيجة	recover (ed)	يتعافى/يشفى
goal (n)	هدف	create (d)	يبتكر/ينشئ
benefit (n)	فائدة	ignore (d)	يتجاهل
invite (d)	يدعو	effectively (adv)	بشكل فعال/بكفاءة
join (ed)	يشارك	worried (adj)	قلق
behave (d)	يتصرف	schoolwork (n)	العمل/الواجبات المدرسية
encourage (d)	يشجع	whether	ما إذا
improve (d)	يتحسن	later (adv)	لاحقًا
evaluate (d)	يقدر/يقيم	project (n)	مشروع
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	blog post (n)	مدونة/منشور
wise (adj)	حكيم	stressed (adj)	متوتر مضغوط
race (n)	سباق	free time (n)	وقت الفراغ
training (n)	تدريب	hobby (n)	هواية
risk (n)	خطر	explore (d)	يستكشف
problem-solving skills	مهارات حل المشكلات	receive (d)	يستلم
influence (n)	تأثير	save (d)	يحفظ



Language

قواعد لغوية

2. The first conditional "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة لحدث ما (أي أنها تعبر عن نتيجة ستحدث إذا تحقق شرط معين).

If / When + subject + present simple مضارع بسيط , subject + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Subject + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل + if / when + subject + present simple مضارع بسيط

Will + subject + inf. + if / when + subject + present simple?
Wh. word + will + subject + inf. + if / when + subject + present simple?

Ex. If / When you eat less sugar, you will be healthy and strong.

Ex. You will be healthy and strong if/ when you eat less sugar.

Ex. Will you go to the club if you finish your homework early?

2. Should / Shouldn't يجب / لا يجب

نستخدم **should / shouldn't** للإعطاء النصيحة .

Subject + should/ shouldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Wh. word + should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. You should study hard.

Ex. You shouldn't waste your time.

Ex. Should I visit the doctor?

Ex. When should I visit the doctor?

لاحظ يمكن استخدام **should** مع **if** :

Ex. You should be careful when you cross the road.

Ex. What should I do if I feel sick?

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

One afternoon, I had free time and had to choose between watching TV or studying for my test. I made a smart decision and chose to study. I didn't ask anyone for advice, but I thought carefully about the consequences. I wanted to reach my goal and avoid negative results. In the end, I passed the test and my teacher was proud of me. I felt happy and proud. This experience taught me to use my time well and not to waste it.

Lessons 3 & 4

Last week, I read a story about a group of children who joined an invention fair. They worked together to build a water-saving machine. At first, the team had some problems, but they decided to be fair and listen to each other. They kept trying and didn't give up. Each person had a role. They used teamwork, curiosity, and determination to finish their project and became better friends in the end.

Lessons 5 & 6

Last month, I faced a problem about my free time. I had to choose between studying for a big science project or going out and explore the park with my friends. I felt nervous and stressed because the project date was very close. I thought carefully and decided to stay home and study effectively. I didn't waste time and focused on my schoolwork. It was a smart decision, and I was proud when I got a high mark.

Al-Azhar Test

Every day, we make many small choices. We choose what to eat, what to wear, and how to spend our time. Some choices, like doing homework or playing, can affect our future. It's important to think carefully before making a decision. Smart daily choices help us stay healthy and happy.

Test on Unit 4

Two months ago, I had to make a difficult decision. I felt sick one day before an important swimming competition. I really wanted to take part, but my coach and parents told me to rest. After thinking carefully, I decided not to swim. It was a wise choice because I recovered fully and trained even harder. In the next competition, I felt strong, and ready- and I was so happy when I won first place.

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ramy made a decision about joining a/ an competition.

- a. art b. drawing c. sports d. painting

2. Ramy's choice was smart and

- a. irresponsible b. uncomfortable c. responsible d. foolish

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ali : Have you ever had a hard choice?

Mohammed : ① I had to choose between playing and doing homework.

Ali : ②?

Mohammed : I decided to finish my homework first. It was a smart choice.

Ali : How did you feel?

Mohammed : ③

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The trained every day to win the race.

- a. teacher b. coach c. athlete d. artist

2. Bad choices can have serious

- a. causes b. goals c. consequences d. success

3. A person with always tells the truth.

- a. determination b. honesty c. curiosity d. experience

4. If you to go out, I will cook dinner at home.

- a. won't want b. not want c. don't want d. doesn't want

5. You go to that restaurant. The food is terrible.

- a. will b. should c. shouldn't d. not

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

At Bright Future School, the invention fair was near. Hana, Youssef, Farah, Adam, and Nour decided to build a solar cooker. At first, Youssef didn't listen to others. Farah reminded him, "We are a team. Everyone's ideas matter." Nour added, "Let's show respect and work together." Adam said, "We must have honesty and make honest choices." When the cooker didn't work, Hana said, "Don't give up. Let's try again!" They showed determination and used their curiosity to improve the model. Each person had a role, and they learned from each other. In the end, they succeeded and became close friends.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did the team decide to build for the invention fair?

2. Who reminded the group to listen to everyone's ideas?

3. What do you think of the team?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "give up" is similar in meaning to -----

- a. continue b. stop c. keep trying d. go on

5. Adam talked with the team about -----

- a. determination b. curiosity c. honesty d. model

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Laila ----- (stay) in London if she gets a job.

2. You ----- (should) talk when the teacher is speaking.

3. ----- (You have) a party if you pass your exams?

4. What will you ----- (did) if Dalia refuses to help you?

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Daily Choices"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 4

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- How many friends did Mariam invite to the party?
a. four b. five c. six d. ten
- How did Mariam feel at the end of the party?
a. sad b. angry c. proud d. nervous
- How was the plan of the party?
a. simple but full of care b. boring and uncomfortable
c. difficult but full of care d. difficult and uncomfortable

B- Listen and complete:

- Mariam wanted her friends to feel happy and
- She made a small for each friend.
- She chose fun games and music.

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "....." means the chance of something bad happening.
a. Decision b. Consequence c. Risk d. Fair
- I need time to my choices before deciding.
a. evaluate b. behave c. design d. suggest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

improve - useful - kept - harmful - better

To stay strong and healthy, I made a plan. I decided to avoid worse ① snacks and eat more fruit daily. At first, it was hard, but I ② trying. I trained with my sister, and we helped each other. After one month, I felt ③ Making small smart choices helped me ④ my health and feel positive.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nada is a responsible girl. She always finishes her homework on time and helps her classmates. She is honest, kind, and ready to solve problems. One day, her teacher asked her to organize a class project for the school fair. Nada accepted the task with a smile. She made a plan and gave each student a role. She reminded her team to

work hard and be fair. When some students had trouble, she listened and helped. She also checked their work and gave advice. The group worked together and finished the project on time. It looked neat and creative. On the day of the fair, the teachers and parents were proud. Everyone thanked Nada for her effort, good choices, and leadership. She felt very proud.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How is Nada?
 a. Lazy and late
 b. Responsible and kind
 c. Funny and noisy
 d. Careless and slow
- What was Nada's role in the project?
 a. She did nothing
 b. She followed others
 c. She led the team
 d. She made jokes

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

- What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?

- How did Nada help when some students had trouble?

- Why do you think Nada's classmates thanked her at the end of the story?

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Children drink sugary drinks. It's not very healthy.
 a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. won't
- When I finish work, I you.
 a. calls b. will call c. don't call d. won't call

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If we (not catch) the bus, we will be late.
- How should I (acting) if someone feels rejected?
- If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we (go) to the beach.
- What (are) you do if you face a problem?

Fatma and Aya are talking about how to make good choices.

Fatma : What do you do when you have two choices?

Aya : I think about the positive and ❶ ----- sides.

Fatma : ② ----- you ask anyone for help?

Aya : Yes, I ask my dad. He gives me advice.

Fatma : How do you feel after making a smart choice?

Aya : I feel happy and ③ _____ of myself.

Fatma :  ----- did you learn from past choices?

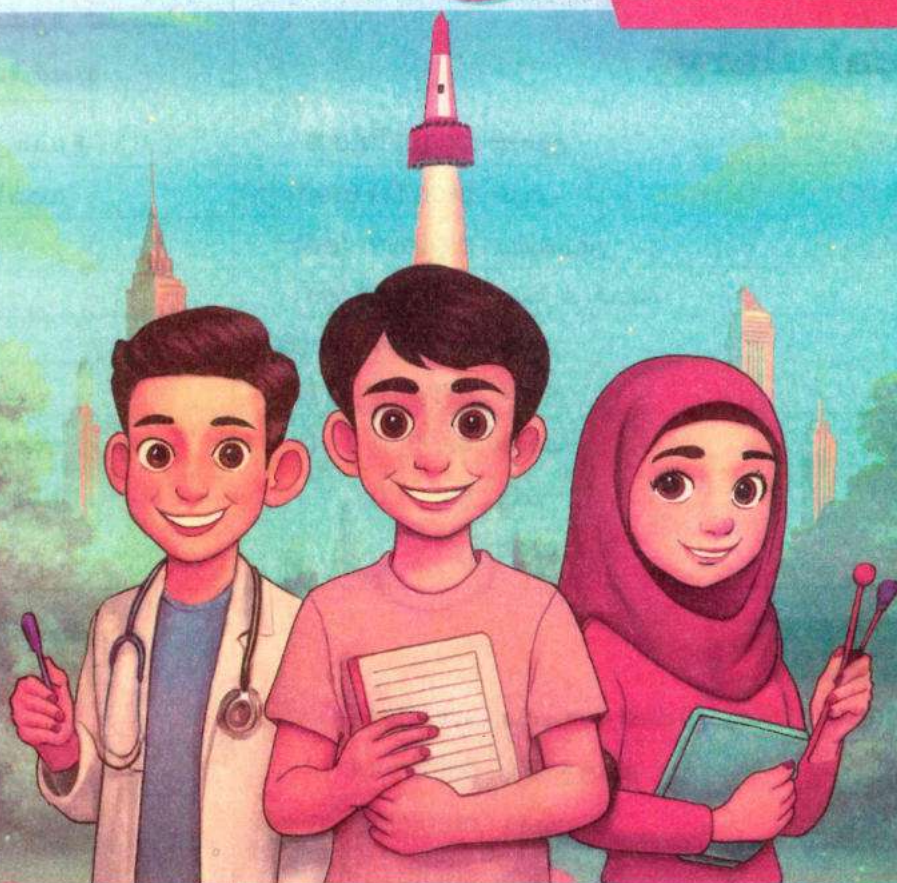
Aya : I learned to take my time before making a decision.

Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

“A wise decision”

[illegible]



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea and at least two supporting details in different text types.
- Use context clues to understand new words related to jobs and future planning.

Listening:

- Identify the main idea in conversations about future plans and careers.
- Identify at least two supporting details in conversations about future plans and careers.

Speaking:

- Talk about personal future goals using "going to."
- Share personal dreams and give reasons in a short presentation or discussion.

Language:

- Understand the future tense using "going to" in context.

Writing:

- Write a structured review about a dream job and steps to achieve it.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

ambition (n)	طموح	bright future	مستقبل مشرق
opportunities (n)	فرص	plan (v) (ned) (n)	يخطط \ خطه
designers (n)	مصمّمون	discover (ed)	يكتشف
path (n)	مسار في الحياة	succeed (ed)	ينجح
passion (n)	شغف	develop (v) (ed)	يطوّر
profession (n)	مهنة	explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
talent (n)	موهبة	support (v) (ed) (n)	يدعم \ دعم
effort (n)	جهد	fail (ed)	يرسب / يفشل
goal (n)	هدف		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

graphic designer	مصمم جرافيك (رسومات)	scientist (n)	عالم
art program	برنامج رسم	astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
real (adj)	حقيقي	medicine (n)	طب
confidence (n)	ثقة	ability (n)	قدرة
career path	المسار المهني	own	ملكه/خاصته
geology (n)	جيولوجيا	create (d)	يُنشئ
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	graduate (d)	يتخرج
NASA	وكالة ناسا الفضائية	achieve (d)	يُحقّق
Apollo mission	مهمة أبولو (رحلة إلى الفضاء)	prepare (d)	يحضر \ يعد
landing sites	مواقع الهبوط	contact (ed)	يتواصل
advertisement (n)	إعلان	design (ed)	يصمم
whatever	أياً كان	tired (adj)	مرهق
workshop (n)	ورشة عمل	wait (ed)	ينتظر
rule (n)	قاعدة	natural (adj)	طبيعي
reality (n)	واقع / واقعية	different (adj)	مختلف
interview (n)	مقابلة		

Expressions & Prepositions

achieve goals	يُحقق الأهداف	join a workshop	ينضم إلى ورشة عمل
set a goal	يحدد هدف	reach a goal	يصل إلى هدف
take a step	يتأخذ خطوه	believe in	يؤمن بـ
bring me closer	تقربني	on the moon	علي سطح القمر
design website	يصمم موقع	wish to	يتمني ان
happy to meet you	سعيد بمقابلتك	participate in	يشارك في
take opportunity	ينتهز الفرصة	dream of	تطمح الي
hard work	عمل شاق	plan/need/prepare for	يخطط / يحتاج / يجهز لـ
career workshop	ورشة عمل مهنية		



Definitions

goal	هدف	something you want to achieve
talent	موهبة	natural skill or ability
effort	مجهود	trying hard to do something



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
support	يساعد	help		oppose	يعارض
succeed	ينجح	achieve		fail	يفشل
curious	مهتم/فضولي	interested		uninterested	غير مبالي
sure	متأكد	certain		unsure	غير متأكد
famous	مشهور	popular		unknown	مجهول / غير معروف

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تعطي عكس الكلمة	unsure
-ity	تحول الصفة الى اسم	reality
-ous		famous
-ful	تحول الاسم الى صفة	skillful
-al		natural
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	carefully

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
find	يجد	found	found
become	يصبح	became	become
give	يعطي	gave	given
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
set	يحدد	set	set

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 discover / invent / explore

• discover

يكتشف شيئاً كان موجوداً من قبل لكن لم يكن - معروفاً

Ex. Christopher Columbus **discovered** America.

• invent

يخترع شيئاً جديداً لم يكن موجوداً من قبل

Ex. Thomas Edison **invented** the electric light.

• explore

يستكشف تقوم برحلة لتعرف المزيد عن شيء مجهول لك

Ex. Astronauts **explore** space.

2 profession/career/job

• job

عمل تقوم به لتحصل على المال

Ex. My dad has a **job** in a school.

• career

حياة مهنية/ مسيرة مهنية

Ex. I want a **career** in medicine.

• profession

عمل يحتاج تدريباً أو دراسة، مثل الطب أو التدريس

Ex. Teaching is my **profession**.

3 contact / connect

• contact

يتواصل مع/ يتصل بـ

تعني أن ترسل رسالة أو تتحدث مع شخص، **يستخدم المفعول بعدها بدون حرف جر**

Ex. I will **contact** my teacher./ Please **contact** me by phone.

• connect

يربط/ يتصل بـ

Ex. I **connect** my phone to Wi-Fi. / We **connect** with people online.

4 Abroad / aboard

• **abroad** تعني في بلد آخر - في الخارج / إلى الخارج

Ex. I want to study **abroad**.

• **aboard = on board** على متن السفينة / الطائرة / الحافلة

Ex. Welcome **aboard** the plane.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother wants to travel _____ next year.

a. abroad b. aboard c. board d. proud

2. She was an actor by _____.

a. profession b. job c. work d. works

3. Please _____ the school if you have questions.

a. connect b. contact c. invent d. explore

4. The scientist _____ a new plant in the forest.

a. invents b. explores c. discovers d. contacts



Reading



SB Page (74)

Discover Your Future: Choose Your Dream Profession Today

استمع إلى النصوص



Are you dreaming of a **bright future**⁽¹⁾? Do you hope to find a job that makes you excited every day? At Future **Career Path**⁽²⁾, we help you find your **ambition**⁽³⁾ and develop every skill you need to succeed. You are going to **discover**⁽⁴⁾ a whole new world of opportunities with us!

Some want to become doctors, while others want to be **designers**⁽⁵⁾ or teachers. Whatever your plan is, we are here to support you. You will find your path if you work hard and **believe**⁽⁶⁾ in yourself. Maybe you are still unsure, but you will decide today to **explore**⁽⁷⁾ your options. If you join our workshop, you will discover your **passion**⁽⁸⁾. We believe you can create the future you want!

Don't wait!!! Take this **opportunity**⁽⁹⁾ now. Your dream profession will become your reality if you start planning today. **Contact us**⁽¹⁰⁾ now. Your future starts right now, right here!

١. مستقبل مشرق
٢. المسار المهني
٣. طموح
٤. يكتشف
٥. مصممون
٦. يؤمن
٧. يستكشف
٨. شغف
٩. فرص
١٠. يتواصل معنا

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What is the purpose of this advertisement?
 a. To give information about job history b. To tell a story about a famous worker
 c. To encourage readers to join a career workshop
2. What does the word "path" mean in this text?
 a. A road or street b. A way to your dream or future c. A rule to follow
3. Find a word in the text that is the opposite of fail.

Answers:
 1. c. To encourage readers to join a career workshop
 2. b. A way to your dream or future
 3. succeed



Lesson 2 page 76 Exercise 2

• Listen to Malek's social media post.

My dream is to become a graphic designer. I enjoy drawing and using technology. Last summer, I joined a free art program in my city. It was hard work, but I learned a lot. My teacher said I have a real talent, and that gave me more confidence.

I set a new goal: to design my own website. I know I'll need time, effort, and support from others. But I'm excited because every step I take brings me closer to my future..



Lesson 2 page 76 Exercise 4

• Listen to the interview with a famous scientist.

Student : Hello, Dr. Farouq El-Baz! I'm very happy to meet you.

Dr. El-Baz : Hello! I'm happy to meet you, too. Do you like science?

Student : Yes, I do! I want to learn more about your work. What did you study?..

Dr. El-Baz : I studied geology and chemistry at Ain-Shams University in Egypt. Then I got my PhD in Geology in the United States.

Student : Wow! That's amazing. How did you help the NASA scientists?

Dr. El-Baz : I worked with NASA during the Apollo missions. I helped the astronauts select safe landing sites on the Moon. I also trained them to read maps and collect rocks.

Student : That's great! If you want to advise students who wish to be successful scientists, what will you say?

Dr. El-Baz : You should study science, work hard, never give up, and always try to help your country and the world.

Student : Thank you, Dr. El-Baz! You are a true hero in science.

Dr. El-Baz : Thank you! And remember, you can be a hero too!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I want to find a good _____ after I graduate.
a. skill b. reality c. job d. designer
2. What should people do to _____ their goals in the future?
a. score b. achieve c. break d. lose
3. My _____ is to become a doctor and help people.
a. opportunity b. workshop c. dream d. path
4. We need to _____ our next steps carefully.
a. lose b. dream c. plan d. forget
5. He has the _____ to travel abroad one day.
a. passion b. profession c. path d. effort
6. We need a skillful _____ for our project.
a. plan b. opportunity c. designer d. path
7. This workshop is a great _____ to learn about different careers.
a. ability b. opportunity c. reality d. competition

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Her _____ is to become a famous scientist.
a. talent b. ambition c. gift d. rule
9. We need to _____ new skills for the job.
a. develop b. support c. design d. fail
10. She has a special _____ for drawing.
a. medicine b. talent c. effort d. purpose
11. You must make an _____ to pass the test.
a. advertisement b. gift c. effort d. scientist
12. My _____ is to learn English well.
a. goal b. rule c. option d. medicine
13. The _____ helped me learn many skills and choose a career.
a. advertisement b. shop c. workshop d. store
14. The students learned about the different materials in _____ class.
a. art b. music c. chemistry d. math

Unit 5 Future Dreams

15. I had a/an _____ for a new job yesterday. I hope I get it.
 a. option b. advertisement c. interview d. medicine
16. NASA has sent many _____ into space.
 a. teachers b. doctores c. vets d. astronauts
17. Egypt is taking _____ to reduce pollution.
 a. stars b. steps c. stairs d. lists
18. I will call a graphic _____ to make me a poster.
 a. nurse b. designer c. organizer d. doctor

Expressions and prepositions

19. Always be ready to _____ opportunity when it comes.
 a. do b. give c. take d. make
20. You should _____ in yourself to do better.
 a. decide b. dream c. believe d. participate
21. They dream _____ being famous singers.
 a. in b. by c. for d. of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skillful - succeed - reality - explore - ambition

We help you find your ① _____ and develop every skill you need to ② _____. Whether you want to become a doctor, designer, or teacher, we are here to support you. Even if you're unsure, you can ③ _____ your options and discover your passion. If you work hard, believe in yourself, and join our workshop, your dream profession will become your ④ _____.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to Mona about future dreams and how to achieve them.

Ali : Hi, Mona! What is your dream?

Mona : I want to be a designer.

Ali : That's cool! ① _____ can you achieve this?

Mona : I need to study hard and learn new skills.

Ali : Do you go to a workshop?

Mona : Yes! I joined a workshop. What ② _____ you?

Ali : That's great. I want to be a pilot.

Mona : Nice! What do you do for that?

Ali : I ③ _____ every day to be fit and ready.

Mona : That's a good start.

Ali : I also believe in myself.

Mona : Me too! We can do it if we work hard.

Ali : Yes! Let's ④ _____.



Language

قواعد لغوية

The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

- يمكن أن نستخدم أكثر من صيغة للتعبير عن المستقبل وسندرس في هذا الدرس **be going to** كما يلي:

Form التكوين

be going to

• سوف للتعبير عن المستقبل **(be) going to**.

I am

He / She / It اسم مفرد is

We / You / They اسم جمع are

+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

• لاحظ الاختصارات: am = 'm / is = 's / are = 're

Ex. He is going to buy a new house next year.

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم **(be) going to** للتعبير عن الآتي:

١- تنبؤ في المستقبل مع وجود دليل:

Ex. It's cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

Ex. I am ('m) going to visit Sinai.

٢- خطط مستقبلية

Ex. I am going to watch TV in the afternoon.

٣- قرارات مسبقة

Ex. I'm going to buy a jacket next

٤- نوايا

• أي أننا نستخدم **(be) going to** للدلالة على الخطط / القرارات / النوايا وتحل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

نية (intention) - ينوي (intend) - قرار (decision) - يقرر (decide) - يخطط / خطة (plan)

٥- أحداث على وشك الوقوع

Ex. Watch out! A car is going to hit you.

Negative النفي

• للنفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf...

← لاحظ الاختصارات:

am not = 'm not / is not = isn't / are not = aren't

Ex. I'm not going to study Spanish.

Question السؤال

للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf ...?

Ex. Are you going to try rock climbing?

للسؤال (بهل):

- Yes, I am.

- No, I am not (I'm not).

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. When are you going to play tennis?

- On Monday.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

next	القادم	tomorrow	غدا	in the future	في المستقبل
soon	قريبًا	tonight	هذه الليلة	in (3 hours)	في خلال (٣ ساعات)



- يمكن أن نستخدم (be) going to بعد (think) طالما أن هناك دليل:

Ex. Look at the clear sky. I think it's going to be a nice day.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

- I visit my uncle this weekend.
a. am going to b. go to c. am d. going to
- Mum bake delicious cookies for us.
a. is going to b. are going to c. is going d. going to
- They are going to the basketball team.
a. joined b. join c. joins d. joining
- Hana to Paris next month.
a. travels b. is going to travel c. travel d. traveled
- The two twins to participate in the art competition.
a. are going b. is going
c. are went d. going to

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. I am going to visit my grandmother
a. a month ago b. last week c. yesterday d. tomorrow
7. They are going to medicine.
a. study b. studied c. studies d. studying
8. We travel to Luxor this evening.
a. are going b. going c. are going to d. going to
9. is going to eat pizza for dinner.
a. They b. We c. He d. You
10. I am tired. I sleep early tonight.
a. am going to b. is going to c. are going d. going
11. My friends and I visit the zoo this weekend.
a. are going to b. is going to c. am going d. visiting
12. She has a test tomorrow. She study after dinner.
a. is going to b. are going to c. am going d. going
13. We have a ball. We play football.
a. are going to b. is going to c. am going to d. plays
14. Ahmed is hungry. He is going to a sandwich.
a. made b. make c. makes d. making
15. Look at the sky! It's very dark. It soon.
a. is going to rain b. rains c. is raining d. was raining
16. That boy is running fast. He win the race.
a. going to win b. going c. is going to d. going to
17. The car has no petrol. It
a. is going to stop. b. stops c. stopping d. have stopped
18. She looks sick. She stay at home.
a. is going to b. will be c. are going d. never
19. They are wearing sports clothes. They play tennis.
a. is going to b. are going to c. am going d. have
20. We eat pizza for dinner tomorrow.
a. never b. don't c. are going to d. did

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. He (going) to watch a movie.
2. I am going (visit) my friend.
3. Are you going to (plays) football?
4. We (is) going to visit the zoo.
5. They (not) going to do their homework.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. She is (buy) a dress. She has an old one.
7. We are going (watched) a film tonight.
8. They (going) travel to Aswan next week.
9. I'm going (wears) my hat. It's sunny outside.
10. It's cloudy. It is (go) to rain.

3 Rewrite the following sentences in the future tense with "going to".

1. I'm visiting my grandmother
2. They study medicine
3. We'll travel to Luxor
4. He eats pizza for dinner

Speaking

In pairs, ask and answer the following questions about your dream goal

• اعمل مع زميلك، واسأل وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية حول العمل الذي تحلم به.

Question	Answer
What is your dream goal? ما هو الهدف الذي تحلم بتحقيقه؟	My dream goal is to be a doctor. حلم حياتي ان اصبح طبيب
Why do you like that? لماذا تحب هذا؟	Because I want to help sick people. حتى يمكنني ان اساعد المرضى.
Is it hard to achieve it? هل صعب تحقيق ذلك؟	Yes, it is. نعم، هو كذلك.
How can you achieve it? كيف يمكنك تحقيق ذلك؟	I study hard and believe in myself. ان ادرس بجد واؤمن بنفسي.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I am thinking in my career as I want to be a doctor in the future.
a. way b. path c. street d. bus
- She studies to help sick people.
a. medicine b. rules c. gifts d. reality
- The baby's smile was so and sweet.
a. unsure b. natural c. famous d. skillful
- Success comes from and practice.
a. hard work b. work hard c. hard job d. work hardly
- We got the plane at 8:00 a.m.
a. abroad b. around c. aboard d. away
- She talks about animals with She is interested in animals.
a. dream b. passion c. ambition d. profession
- The car is going too fast. It crash!
a. is b. is going to c. may be d. going to
- They going to watch a film tonight.
a. can b. will c. are d. were
- I am going to medicine. I really want to help people.
a. study b. studies c. studying d. studied

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

passion - ambition - develop - opportunity - help

My name is Laila. I have a big ① to become a doctor. I love helping people, and I have a strong ② for science. I study hard every day to ③ my skills. Last week, I got an ④ to join a science workshop. I was very happy! I believe I will succeed if I keep working hard.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She (are) going to visit her grandmother tomorrow.
- I (is) going to play football after school.
- (Are) he going to buy a new phone?
- We are going to (eating) fast food today.
- They (going) to travel to Italy next month.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

An interview with a scientist

Interviewer : Hello! What is your name?

Scientist : Hello! My name is Dr. Amal.

Interviewer : Nice to meet you, Dr. Amal. What is your 1 _____ ?

Scientist : I'm a scientist. I study plants and how they grow.

Interviewer : That's interesting! Why did you become a scientist?

Scientist : It was my 2 _____ from when I was young.

Interviewer : 3 _____ are you working on?

Scientist : I'm working on new ways to grow healthy food.

Interviewer : Are you going to discover something new?

Scientist : Yes, I'm going to try! Science takes time and hard work.

Interviewer : 4 _____ !

Scientist : You're welcome!

5 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"Your future dream"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What is the dream?
- 2- Why do you want this dream ?
- 3- What are you going to do ?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My dream is to be
- Believe in
- Be ready to take any opportunities



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

university (n)	جامعة	perfectly (adv)	بشكل مثالي
training (n)	تدريب	shy (adj)	خجول
education (n)	تعليم	unique (adj)	فريد / مميز
fairness (n)	عدل / إنصاف	skill (n)	مهارة
success (n)	نجاح	wish (ed)	يتمنى
achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز	talent (n)	موهبة

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

water-saving machine	آلة لتوفير المياه	finally (adv)	أخيرًا
rainwater (n)	مياه المطر	notice (d)	يلاحظ
purpose (n)	هدف / غرض	praise (d)	يمدح
aspiration (n)	طموح / أمل	pass (ed)	ينجح
task (n)	مهمة	face (d)	يواجه
laugh (v)	يضحك	gather (ed)	يجمع / يلتقي
pathway (n)	مسار / ممر / طريق	save (d)	يُنقذ
perfect (adj)	مثالي	test (ed)	يختبر
friendship (n)	صداقة	match (ed)	يناسب / يلائم
prize (n)	جائزة	nod (ded)	يوميء بالموافقة
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	divide (d)	يقسم
communication (n)	تواصل	blame (d)	يلوم
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	fix (ed)	يصلح



Definitions

achieve	يحقق / ينجز	to reach something you worked for.
wish	يتمنى / أمنية	a strong hope for something.
talent	موهبة	a natural ability you have.
university	جامعة	a place for higher study.
education	تعليم	learning at school or university.

Expressions & Prepositions

make them smile	يجعلهم يبتسمون،	full of heart	نابع من القلب/ بصدق وإحساس
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	take shape	يتشكل أو يتطور
come true	تتحقق	proud of	فخور بـ
get the skills	يكتسب المهارات	feel tired of	يشعر بالتعب من
lose hope	يفقد الأمل	look after	يعتني بـ
made a mistake	ارتكب خطأ	hope for	يأمل فـ
think about	يفكر في		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
blame	يلوم	criticize		praise	يمدح
win	يفوز	achieve		lose	يخسر
success	فوز، نجاح	victory		failure	فشل
tired	متعب / مرهق	exhausted		relaxed	مرتاح
kind	طيب / لطيف	friendly		unkind	غير عطوف
strong	قوي	powerful		weak	ضعيف

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة الى ظرف	regularly
-ful	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة	helpful
-ing	تحول الفعل الى اسم	helping / training / studying
dis-	تعطي عكس المعنى	discourage

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يفكر	thought	thought
know	يعرف	knew	known
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
build	يبني	built	built



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 Reach / arrive

- **reach** (يصل إلى (بدون حرف جر))

Ex. We **reached** the station at 5 PM.

- **arrive** يصل إلى

at + مكان صغير مبني أو منشأة

in + مكان كبير مدينة أو دولة

Ex. He **arrived at** the airport./ They **arrived in** London.

2 go to university / go to the university

- **go to university**

يذهب إلى الجامعة (كطالب)

Ex. He **goes to university** in London.

- **go to the university**

يذهب إلى الجامعة (كزائر)

Ex. She went **to the university** to meet her friend.

3 voice / noise / sound

- **voice** صوت الإنسان عند التحدث أو الغناء

Ex. Her **voice** is very beautiful.

- **sound** صوت (بشكل عام)

Ex. I heard a strange **sound** in the kitchen.

- **noise** ضوضاء أو صوت مزعج

Ex. There was a loud **noise** outside.

4 late / lately

- **late** متأخر

Ex. He arrived **late** to the meeting.

- **lately** مؤخرًا/ في الآونة الأخيرة

Ex. I haven't seen her **lately**.

5 along the way / a long way

- **along the way**

على طول الطريق/ أثناء الطريق

Ex. We met some interesting people **along the way**.

- **a long way**

مسافة طويلة

Ex. He walked **a long way** to reach the village.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We the hotel at 6 p.m.
a. arrived b. got c. reached d. come
2. I got to school today.
a. lately b. later c. late d. reach
3. I heard a strange in the kitchen. It sounded like something fell on the floor.
a. cry b. voice c. noise d. laugh
4. He walked to get to school; it took him an hour.
a. along the way b. a long way c. the way long d. long way

Reading

SB Page (82)

استمع إلى النص

Read the text. What is Omar's biggest dream?

My Future Dreams and Career Plans

Hello, my name is Omar, and I am 11 years old. I always think about my future career. I wish to find a **profession**⁽¹⁾ that matches my **talent**⁽²⁾ and makes me happy. I love helping people, so I want to become a doctor one day.

I know that I need a good **education**⁽³⁾ to reach my dream. After school, I will go to **university**⁽⁵⁾ to study **medicine**⁽⁴⁾. I will also need **training**⁽⁶⁾ in hospitals so I can learn how to look after patients. This training will help me get the **skills**⁽⁷⁾ I need for success in my profession.

My biggest dream is to help people feel better and to make them smile. I will work hard so I can **achieve**⁽⁸⁾ my goals. Sometimes, I feel tired of studying, but I remember that I am working for my future. I believe that if I study well and **practise**⁽⁹⁾ a lot, I will become a good doctor. I will also have a job that I love.

This is a very long way, but I will work very hard to make my dreams **come true**⁽¹⁰⁾.

١. مهنة
٢. موهبة
٣. تعليم
٤. جامعة
٥. الطب
٦. التدريب
٧. مهارات
٨. يحقق
٩. يتدرب
١٠. يتحقق

Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

- Omar wishes to find a _____ that matches his talent.
a. profession b. prize c. road d. success
- Omar wants to study _____ at university.
a. medicine b. art c. engineering d. design
- Working hard helps Omar _____ his goals.
a. forget b. read c. learn d. achieve

2. a. medicine

1. a. profession
3. d. achieve

Answers:

Story Time

The Dream Team

Chapter Two

Does Lily feel shy now?



Before you read, discuss in pairs

Days passed⁽¹⁾, and the Water-Saving Machine started to take shape. But the team faced⁽²⁾ another problem. The machine worked, but not perfectly⁽³⁾. Some members felt discouraged⁽⁴⁾. Sara gathered⁽⁵⁾ them and said, "Our purpose isn't just to win the competition⁽⁶⁾, it's to help people. Let's not lose hope." Omar nodded, "We have an aspiration⁽⁷⁾-to save water for our village. We can do this!"

Lily, who felt shy before, found her voice, "We can make it better if we test it again and again."

The team worked late, supporting each other. They respected every idea, and organized the work

when dividing tasks⁽⁸⁾, and sharing steps along the way. When Karim made a mistake, no one blamed⁽⁹⁾ him. Instead, they helped him fix it.

Finally, the machine was ready. It used rainwater⁽¹⁰⁾ to water plants and clean small pathways. It wasn't perfect, but it was unique and full of heart.

The team were proud of what they built-not just the machine, but the friendship⁽¹¹⁾ they shared.

- مرت الايام
- واجهه
- ليست بطريقة
- مثالية
- الاجبات
- جمعت
- المسابقة
- امل
- مهام مقسمة
- يلوم
- مياة المطر
- الصداقة



Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Omar wishes to find a that matches his talent.
a. profession b. prize c. road d. wish
2. Omar wants to study at university. He wants to be a doctor.
a. medicine b. art c. engineering d. education
3. Working hard helps Omar his goals.
a. forget b. read c. learn d. achieve
4. To is to reach something you worked for.
a. success b. dream c. skill d. respect
5. A strong hope for something is a
a. success b. wish c. skill d. talent
6. A natural ability you have is a
a. success b. dream c. wish d. talent
7. A place for higher study is a
a. store b. university c. mall d. kindergarten
8. Learning at school or university is called
a. success b. university c. education d. vacation
9. I want to study hard so that I can my dream.
a. lose b. career c. reach d. fail
10. You need to train regularly to get the of teamwork and communication.
a. matches b. skills c. game d. career
11. My future is to become a doctor one day.
a. skills b. career c. reach d. matches
12. He chose painting because it his talent.
a. catches b. matches c. thinks d. loses

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. He goes to football every weekend to get better.
a. talent b. skill c. training d. fairness
14. Children around the world should have the right
a. education b. pollution c. holiday d. noise

15. Treating people equally shows
 a. success b. talent c. fairness d. training
16. If you want to your goals, you must work hard.
 a. shy b. achieve c. match d. dream
17. He answered all the questions
 a. shy b. laugh c. perfectly d. unique
18. She is too to speak in front of the class.
 a. loud b. shy c. fair d. strong
19. It was a/an achievement - no-one has ever won the championship five times before.
 a. unique b. same c. loud d. equal
20. Doing your homework is an important
 a. prize b. task c. machine d. friendship
21. Education is a to a better future.
 a. machine b. pathway c. laugh d. friendship
22. True means helping each other.
 a. prize b. friendship c. task d. laugh

Expressions and prepositions

23. I gave my friend a small gift to them smile.
 a. do b. get c. make d. take
24. I hope all your dreams come one day.
 a. better b. true c. hope d. about

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

talent - university - fairness - skills - education

Amira believes that ① is very important, so she studies hard every day. Her dream is to go to a good ② and become a doctor. Amira has a natural ③ for science, and she enjoys helping people. She also has great communication ④ , which she uses when talking to her friends and teachers.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Sara are talking to Sara about how can they support each other in teamwork.

Ali : Hi Sara! Are you ready to work on the school project?

Sara : Yes, I am! I think we can do a great job if we 1

Ali : You're right. Teamwork is important. 2 can you do?

Sara : I can write the report, What 3 you?

Sara : I can make the presentation.

Ali : That's a good idea. We must be kind and patient.

Sara : And we should be 4

Ali : Great! Let's work together!



Language

قواعد لغوية

Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

هي كلمات تأتي معًا بشكل طبيعي وصحيح حتي تعطى معنى ملائم.

- هناك نوعان من هذه التراكيب:

* Make a decision

١ - اسم + فعل (Verb + noun)

* Strong coffee

٢ - صفة + اسم (Adjective + noun)

هذه التراكيب تجنبك كتابة الكلمات بطريقة عشوائية.

ادرس الجدول التالي

Verb + Noun	Adjective + noun
score goals	digital life
have job	critical thinking
match talent	
build machine	

Complete the sentences with the correct collocation from the box

skills - makes - have - matches

1. I want to study hard so that I can a good job.
2. You need to train regularly to have the of teamwork and communication.
3. I hope I can get a job that me happy.
4. He chose painting because it his talent.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm ready for my job interview. I have the to get this job.
a. skins b. skates c. skills d. skulls
2. I'm finally going to my goal of traveling abroad. .
a. develop b. achieve c. lose d. hate
3. I'm going to make my dreams true by wining the race .
a. come b. go c. take d. give
4. I thought I lost keys. I started to hope until I found them on the table.
a. take b. lose c. make d. come
5. It's OK to a mistake, but at least you should learn from your mistakes.
a. make b. do c. become d. give
6. She at the airport yesterday.
a. got b. arrived c. reached d. went
7. We stopped for ice cream
a. a long way b. the long way c. long the way d. along the way
8. Good helps us understand each other.
a. communication b. prize c. aspiration d. village
9. His love for music and playing guitar really matches his
a. skills b. talent c. goals d. career
10. After months of hard work, she finally enjoyed her
a. empathy b. fairness c. success d. aspiration

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fairness - achieve - training - unique - shy

Mona feels a little ① _____, especially when speaking in front of many people, but she knows that with hard work and good ② _____, she can improve. Her teachers say she is ③ _____ because she always treats others with respect. Amira wants to ④ _____ her dream and become a doctor.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Laila is talking to Omar about their future careers

Laila : Hi Omar! What are you doing?

Omar : I'm thinking about my future career.

Laila: That's great! I want to be a doctor one day.

Omar : Wow! ① _____do you want to be a doctor?

Laila : Because I want to help people , ② _____ about you ?

Omar : I want to be an engineer.

Laila : Choosing a future career is very important, isn't it ? .

Omar : Yes, ③ _____

Laila : And we can do something we enjoy.

Omar : Exactly! If we follow our dreams, we can succeed.

Laila : Let's ④ _____ !

4 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

" Career plans"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1- What are your plans?

2- How can we achieve our goals?

- يمكنك إستخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We should have plans -----

- We should believe in -----

- Study well and work hard -----



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

plan (n) (ned)	خطة \ يخطط	creative (adj)	مبدع
skill (n)	مهارة	get ready	استعد
ambition (n)	طموح	mind map	خريطة ذهنية
talent (n)	موهبة	treat (ed)	يعالج او يعامل
succeed (ed)	ينجح		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

favorite (adj)	مُفضّل	share (d)	يشارك
special (adj)	خاصّ	follow (ed)	يتبع
include (d)	يضمّ	good side	الجانب السلبي
design (ed)	يصمّم	hard side	الجانب الصعب او جانب التحدي
engineering (n)	الهندسة	care for	يعتني بـ
pass (ed)	يمرّ	sick animals	حيوانات مريضه
add (ed)	يضيف	vet (n)	طبيب بيطري
talk (ed)	يتكلّم	owner (n)	مالك

Expressions & Prepositions

it's important to	من المهم ان	in my opinion	في رأيي
make a plan	تضع خطة	make a mind map	إعداد خريطة ذهنية
go to bed	تذهب إلى الفراش	enjoy about + اسم	يستمتع بـ
design buildings	يصمم مباني	has a talent for	لديه موهبة في



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
include	يشمل	contain		exclude	يُستبعد
go to bed	يذهب إلى الفراش	sleep		get up	يستيقظ

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ing	تحول الفعل الى اسم مجرد (لا يعد)	engineering, writing,
	تحول الفعل الى اسم ملموس (يعد)	buildings, drawings,
-ive	تحول الفعل الى صفة	creative

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحتفظ	kept	kept
write	يكتب	wrote	written
see	يرى	saw	seen
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
read	يقرأ	read	read

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 The + musical instrument

- نستخدم (a/an) عندما نتكلم عن آلة محددة .
- نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الآلات الموسيقية عندما نتكلم عنها بشكل عام .

Ex. I play the guitar.

Ex. I bought a guitar.

2 at least / at last

• at least = على الأقل

Ex. You should drink at least 8 glasses of water every day.

• at last = أخيرًا / في النهاية

Ex. At last, she found her lost keys.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She waited for an hour, and the doctor came.

a. at least b. at last c. all d. whole

2. He plays guitar very well.

a. a b. an c. the d. some

Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

• Apostrophe (')

• تستخدم الفاصلة العليا (') في:

• تُستخدم الفاصلة العليا في الحالات التالية:

① في الملكية (s) إذا كان الاسم مفرد أو جمع (شاذ) غير منتهي بـ (s)

- This is Noha's book.

- The children's room.

- نضع (') فقط مع الاسم الجمع المنتهي بـ (s)

- The teachers' room → Room of many teachers.

② في اختصارات الضمائر مع الافعال أو في اختصارات النفي

I am = I'm

He is = He's

do not = don't

• Practice

- 1- She ll come soon.
- 2- The girls bags are over there.
- 3- This is Amir s mobile phone.

Reading

SB Page (82)

• Read the following.

My dream job is to become a vet. A vet is a doctor who treats animals. I love animals, so I think this job is good for me. The good side is caring for sick animals and making them feel better. Vets also work with many different animals, which is fun and exciting. However, there are some hard sides. Animals don't speak. It's hard to help them. Also, vets need to study hard for many years.

In my opinion, this job is very important. Helping animals makes a difference to them and their owners. This is my dream job. One day, I hope I can become a great vet.

Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. It's my to be a teacher one day.

a. plane

b. talent

c. ambition

d. training

Unit 5 Future Dreams

2. She has a special _____ for music.
a. article b. talent c. park d. succeed
3. It's important to make a good _____ for your future.
a. plane b. play c. plan d. cycle
4. You will _____ if you work hard and stay focused.
a. fail b. succeed c. lose d. hate

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. He is very _____. He draws and invents great things.
a. creative b. ready c. quiet d. slow
6. We need to _____ ready before the test.
a. take b. have c. get d. make
7. A _____ helps you organize your ideas using pictures and words.
a. fairness b. mind map c. performance d. career

Expressions & prepositions

8. We are working on a _____ for science class.
a. talent b. team project c. bedtime d. prediction

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

mind map - creative - special - ambition- design

I want to be an engineer. My ① _____ is to design houses and buildings. I am very ② _____ and I love drawing. My favorite subject is math. Last week, we had a ③ _____ class about future jobs. Our teacher gave us instructions to make ④ _____ about our dreams, and each group had a different job idea.

Writing a review

Describe what you are writing about صف ما تكتب عنه

- I want to write a review about the job of a teacher. A teacher helps students learn at school.

Write the good and bad sides اذكر الجوانب الجيدة والسيئة

- One good thing about being (a teacher) is helping others.
- A bad part of being (a teacher) is that you have to check a lot of homework and work for many hours.

Write what you think of it عَنِ رَأْيِكَ فِيهِ

- I think being (a teacher) is a great job. It is not easy, but it is important. I want to be a teacher.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has the to become a great engineer.
a. food b. ambition c. vacation d. decision
2. I need good to work with computers.
a. performances b. talents c. skills d. games
3. Let's for the exam by reading and taking notes.
a. jump b. talk c. get ready d. play
4. A/An part of this job is the long working hours.
a. good b. bad c. famous d. easy
5. I want to be a actor in movies.
a. famous b. quiet c. lucky d. healthy
6. I'm going to English and science to reach my goal.
a. sleep b. study c. dance d. listen
7. The architect showed us his new house
a. question b. plan c. design d. reason
8. I study medicine at university.
a. am going to b. going to c. will be d. want
9. He open his own studio one day.
a. going to b. is going to c. is going d. want
10. We learn new skills this summer.
a. are going b. going c. are going to d. go
11. I take a course to improve my English next summer.
a. going to b. will be c. am going to d. wants

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

speak - treats - caring - difference - different

Mokhtar's dream job is to become a vet. A vet is a doctor who ① animals. The good side is ② for sick animals and making them feel better. However, there some hard sides. Animals don't ③ Helping animals makes a ④ to them and their owners.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Omar are talking about being a policeman.

Ali : Hi Omar! What do you want to be?

Omar : I want to be a ①

Ali : Really? That's interesting! ② do you want to be a policeman?

Omar : Because I want to help people and protect them.

Ali : But are there any bad sides to the job?

Omar : Yes, of course. I is ③

Ali : Hmm, that's true. It's not easy.

Omar : I think it's a brave and helpful job.

Ali : That's great, Omar. I hope your dream comes true!

Omar : Thanks, Ali! ④

4 Write a review of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"You dream job "

.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is a dream?

- How can you achieve it ?

- Who can help you?

- يمكنك إستخدام العبارات الآتية:

- A dream is.....

- My father always

- Study hard

Review on Unit 5

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

ambition (n)	طموح	education (n)	تعليم
opportunities (n)	فرص	fairness (n)	عدل / إنصاف
designers (n)	مصممون	success (n)	نجاح
path (n)	مسار في الحياة	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
passion (n)	شغف	perfectly (adv)	بشكل مثالي
profession (n)	مهنة	shy (adj)	خجول
talent (n)	موهبة	unique (adj)	فريد / مميز
effort (n)	جهد	skill (n)	مهارة
goal (n)	هدف	wish (ed)	يتمنى
bright future	مستقبل مشرق	talent (n)	موهبة
plan (v) (ned) (n)	يخطط \ خطه	plan (n) (ned)	خطة \ يخطط
discover (ed)	يكتشف	skill (n)	مهارة
succeed (ed)	ينجح	ambition (n)	طموح
develop (v) (ed)	يطور	talent (n)	موهبة
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف	succeed (ed)	ينجح
support (v) (ed) (n)	يدعم \ دعم	creative (adj)	مبدع
fail (ed)	يرسب / يفشل	get ready	استعد
university (n)	جامعة	mind map	خريطة ذهنية
training (n)	تدريب	treat (ed)	يعالج او يعامل



Language

قواعد لغوية

The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

- يمكن أن نستخدم أكثر من صيغة للتعبير عن المستقبل وسندرس في هذا الدرس **be going to** كما يلي:

Form التكوين

be going to

• سوف للتعبير عن المستقبل **(be) going to**.

I	am	} + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He / She / It	is	
We / You / They	are	

• لاحظ الاختصارات: **am = 'm / is = 's / are = 're**

Ex. He **is going to buy** a new house next year.

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم **(be) going to** للتعبير عن الآتي:

١- تنبؤ في المستقبل مع وجود دليل:

Ex. It's cloudy. I think it **is going to rain**.

Ex. I **am ('m) going to visit** Sinai.

٢- خطط مستقبلية

Ex. I **am going to watch** TV in the afternoon.

٣- قرارات مسبقة

Ex. I'm **going to buy** a jacket next

٤- نوايا

• أي أننا نستخدم **(be) going to** للدلالة على الخطط / القرارات / النوايا وتدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

نية (intention) - ينوي (intend) - قرار (decision) - يقرر (decide) - يخطط / خطة (plan)

٥- أحداث على وشك الوقوع

Ex. Watch out! A car **is going to hit** you.

Negative النفي

• للنفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + **am / is / are + not + going to + inf...**

← لاحظ الاختصارات:

am not = 'm not / is not = isn't / are not = aren't

Ex. I'm **not going to study** Spanish.

Question السؤال

للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf ...? (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Are you going to try rock climbing?

للسؤال (بهل):

- Yes, I am.

- No, I am not (I'm not).

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. When are you going to play tennis?

- On Monday.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

next	القادم	tomorrow	غدا	in the future	في المستقبل
soon	قريبا	tonight	هذه الليلة	in (3 hours)	في خلال (3 ساعات)



- يمكن أن نستخدم (be) going to بعد (think) طالما أن هناك دليل:

Ex. Look at the clear sky. I think it's going to be a nice day.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Collocations التراكيب / المتلازمات اللفظية

هي كلمات تأتي معًا بشكل طبيعي وصحيح حتي تعطى معنى ملائم.

- هناك نوعان من هذه التراكيب:

* Make a decision

١ - اسم + فعل (Verb + noun)

* Strong coffee

٢ - صفة + اسم (Adjective + noun)

هذه التراكيب تجنبك كتابة الكلمات بطريقة عشوائية.

ادرس الجدول التالي

Verb + Noun	Adjective + noun
score goals	digital life
have job	critical thinking
match talent	
build machine	

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وُردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

In the future, I want to be a doctor. I love helping people and making them feel better. I will study hard and never give up. My dream is to work in a big hospital. I also want to travel to learn new things.

Lessons 3 & 4

My future career plans are simple. I want to be an engineer in the future. I enjoy solving problems and building things. I plan to study hard and learn more about technology. I will choose the right subjects at school.

Lessons 5 & 6

I think being a teacher is a great job. I love explaining ideas and helping others learn. Teachers make a big difference in students' lives. To be a teacher, you need to be patient, kind and good at communication.

Al-Azhar Test

I want to be a nurse because I like helping sick people. Nurses work in hospitals. They care for patients. They are kind and helpful. They help doctors.

Test on Unit 5

Working abroad has good and bad sides. It's good because you can earn more money and learn about new cultures. But it can be hard to live away from your family. So, it has both good and bad points.

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- My dream job is to be
 a. an engineer b. a doctor c. a teacher d. a policeman
- To make my dream come true, I need to
 a. feel better b. eat well
 c. study hard d. get enough sleep

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Lina and Sara are talking about mind maps.

Sara : Hi Lina! ①

Lina : Hi Sara! I'm making a mind map for my dream job.

Sara : A mind map! ②

Lina : It's a picture with ideas.

Sara : Oh, that sounds fun! What's your dream job?

Lina : ③ In my mind map, I wrote "Teacher" in the center.
 Then I added words like "help children," "teach English," and "read books."

Sara : That's a good idea.

Lina : Yes! It helps me think and remember my ideas.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My mom cooked a meal for my birthday.
 a. special b. boring c. usual d. late
- There is a secret box the table.
 a. over b. next c. underneath d. through
- The artist is very and makes beautiful things.
 a. lazy b. creative c. loud d. fast
- We must follow the when we play a game.
 a. roles b. rules c. performance d. inspirations
- A doctor, a teacher, and a pilot are examples of a
 a. hobby b. profession c. skill d. fairness

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

A firefighter is a very important person. Firefighters help people in danger. They put out fires and save lives. They also help in accidents or when people need help quickly. Firefighters wear special clothes and helmets to stay safe. They drive big fire trucks with loud sirens. Sometimes they work during the day, and sometimes at night. Being a firefighter is not easy. It can be dangerous and hard. But it is also a very brave and helpful job. I think firefighters are real heroes.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why is a firefighter important ?
- 2- What does a firefighter do ?
- 3- When does a firefighter work?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- Being a firefighter is not
a. good b. helpful c. easy d. important
- 5- The underlined word they refers to
a. people in danger b. firefighters c. trucks d. sirens

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (be) going to travel to Luxor next week.
2. She is (go) to start a new job.
3. I am (going) eat pizza tonight.
4. My sister is going (studying) science at university.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Being a nurse."

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 5

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- Everyone has
a. a car b. a dream job c. a computer d. a teacher
- To get your dream job, you need to
a. eat well b. work hard c. play much d. watch TV
- Good marks help you go to a good
a. cinema b. theatre c. university d. club

2 B- Listen and complete:

- You need to learn the right
- A doctor needs
- A pilot needs computer and

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My cousin wants to study to become an engineer.
a. history b. science c. engineering d. music
- My is to work at a hospital and help people.
a. prediction b. ambition c. instruction d. profession

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

work - challenge - skills - money - ambition

One day, I hope to make ① and help my family. I believe I can do it with hard ② and a good ③ I will always do my best and never give up. I want to be proud of my job and enjoy it. I will learn new ④ and take useful courses. My dream is big, but I believe in myself.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A pilot is a person who flies airplanes. Pilots help people travel from one city or country to another. They work at airports and fly in the sky for many hours. Pilots wear a special uniform. To become a pilot, you need to study hard. You must go to a flying school and learn about planes. Pilots also need computer and math skills. They must

stay focused and make good decisions during the flight.

Being a pilot is exciting because you can see the clouds, visit many places, and meet people from different countries. But the job can be difficult too. Pilots sometimes fly at night or in bad weather. They may also be away from home for many days.

I think being a pilot is a great job. I want to be a pilot when I grow up.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What do pilots do _____?
 a. Drive trains b. Fly airplanes c. Build airports d. Fix computers
- Why is being a pilot exciting _____?
 a. You stay at home b. You sleep a lot
 c. You see many places d. You read books

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where do pilots work?

- What skills do pilots need?

- When can the job be difficult for a pilot?

- What is the main idea of the text?

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- We are going _____ to Aswan next week.
 a. travel b. to travelling c. to travel d. will travel
- What _____ you going to do tomorrow?
 a. are b. do c. did d. does

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Look at those clouds! It _____ (rain).
- (Do) _____ they going to travel to Spain next summer?

3. I (not) going to study tonight because I'm too tired.

4. She is (go) to buy a new laptop soon.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Lena is talking to Omar about a dream came true .

Lena : Hi Omar! You look so happy today!

Omar : Hi Lena! Yes, I am! I became an ①

Lena : Really? That's great! What happened?

Omar : ② I have finished studying!

Lena : Wow! That's your dream job, right?

Omar : Yes! I've always wanted to build things and design machines.

Lena : You worked so hard for it. I'm really happy for you.

Omar : ③! I studied hard, took courses, and stayed focused.

Lena : ④ are you going to start working?

Omar : Next month!

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The good and bad sides of working abroad"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

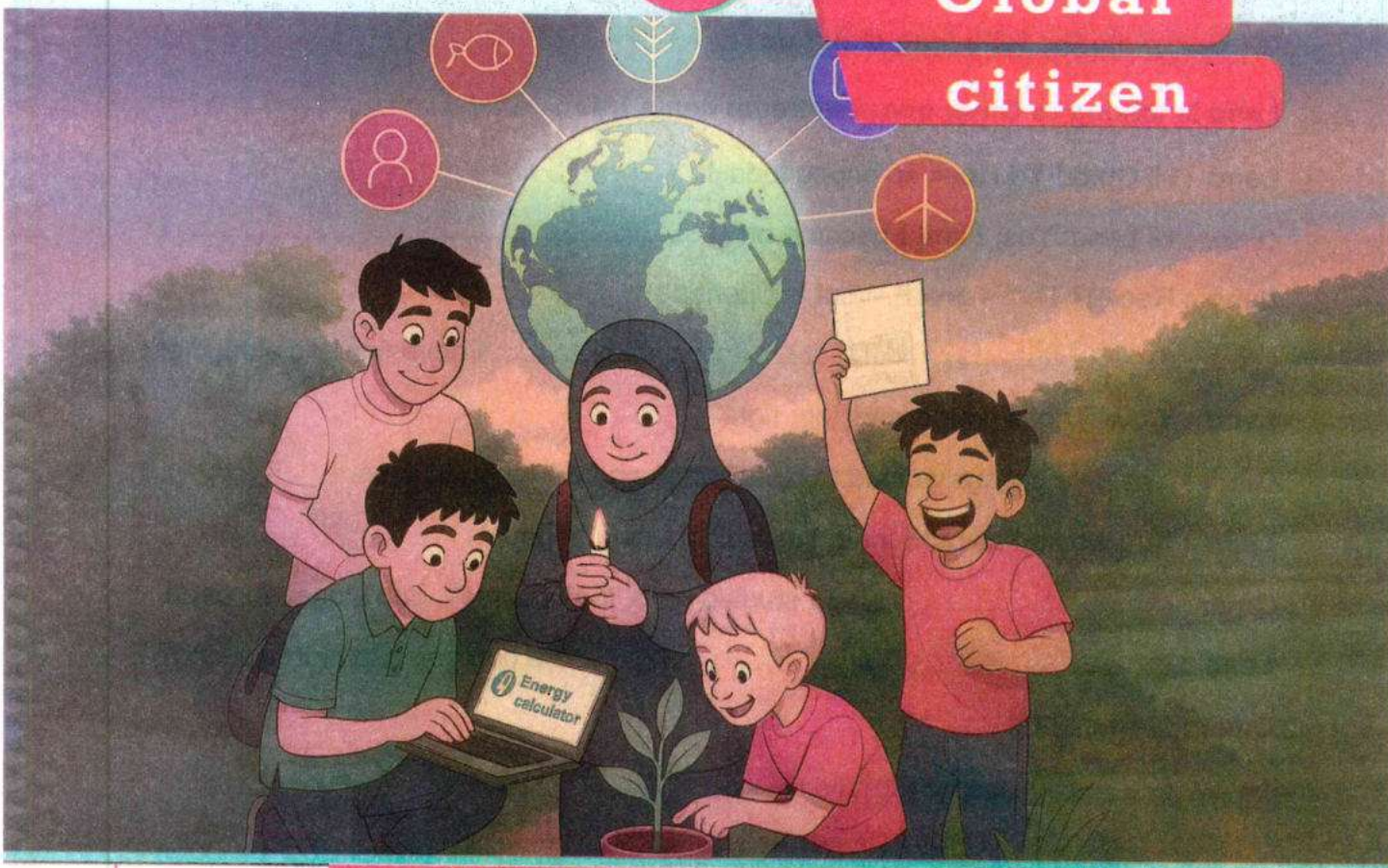
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea and specific details in texts about global citizenship and community rules
- Use context clues to understand new vocabulary related to global responsibility

Listening:

- Identify the main idea and specific details in spoken texts about community or environmental topics
- Infer the meaning of key expressions from context

Speaking:

- Describe good citizen behaviors using correct vocabulary and structures
- Explain community or school rules clearly

Language:

- Use "must" and "mustn't" accurately to express rules and obligations

Writing:

- Write a social media post list of rules for being a good citizen using target structures and vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

global citizen*	مواطن عالمي	improve (d)	يحسن
protect (ed)	يحمي	encourage (d)	يشجع
unfair (adj)	غير عادل	solve (d)	يحل
rule (n)	قاعدة	waste (d)	يضيع
culture (n)	ثقافة	follow (ed)	يتبع
law (n)	قانون	believe (d)	يصدق/يعتقد
safe (adj)	امن	change (d)	يغير
planet (n)	كوكب	save (d)	ينقذ
peace (n)	سلام	treat (ed)	يعامل
respect (ed)	يحترم	volunteer (ed)	يتطوع
ground (n)	أرضية	rubbish (n)	زبالة / قمامة

Vocabulary



المفردات الاضافية

handbook (n)	كتيب/دليل	gloves (n)	قفازات
electricity (n)	كهرباء	impact (n)	تأثير / انطباع
nature (n)	الطبيعة	inspire (d)	يلهم
care (n)	رعاية	politely (adv)	بأدب
community (n)	مجتمع	justice (n)	العدل
traditions (n)	تقاليد	project (n)	مشروع
others (n)	اخرين	leader (n)	قائد
different (adj)	مختلف	join (ed)	يلتحق
language (n)	لغة	collect (ed)	يجمع
citizenship (n)	مواطنة	paint (ed)	يدهن
contribute (d)	يساهم		

* المواطن العالمي هو شخص يدرك العالم ويتفهم دوره فيه، يشارك بنشاط في مجتمعه ويعمل مع الآخرين لجعل كوكبنا أكثر سلاماً واستدامة وعدلاً

Definitions

global citizen (n)	مواطن عالمي	being fair to people from different countries and cultures,
encourage (v)	يشجع	to help people do good things.
improve (v)	يحسن	to make something better
protect (v)	يحمي	to look after or save.
unfair (adj)	غير عادل	not to treat people in an equal way.
volunteer (v)	يتطوع	to give your time to help others without being paid
respect (v)	يحترم	to treat people or things with care and kindness
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	to do your duty and take care of something
environment (n)	بيئة	the world around us like land, air and water

Expressions & Prepositions

in need	في احتياج	sounds fun	يبدو ممتع
show respect	يظهر الاحترام	catch the train	يلحق القطار
no matter	بغض النظر	kind to	عطوف على
think about	يفكر بشأن	come from	يكون من
make a big difference	يحدث فارق كبير	make good choices	يقوم بخيارات جيدة
share with	يتشارك مع	allowed to	مسموح له ان
care for	يهتم بـ	feel bad	يشعر بالسوء
I see	فهمت		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
real	حقيقي	factual	unreal غير حقيقي
safe	امن	secure	unsafe غير امن
rubbish	قمامة	waste	
responsible	مسؤول	in charge	irresponsible غير مسؤول
fair	عادل	just	unfair غير عادل
honest	أمين	sincere	dishonest غير أمين

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تحول الصفة الى عكسها	unkind / unfair
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	global
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	politely

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
win	يفوز	won	won
catch	يمسك/يلحق	caught	caught



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 every day / everyday

• every day كل يوم

- ظرف يأتي في أول الجملة أو آخرها.

Ex. We don't go to school every day.

Ex. Every day, Heba helps her mom with the housework.

• everyday يومي

- صفة تأتي فقط قبل الاسم الموصوف.

Ex. The book is written in a simple everyday language.

2 rule / role

• rule قاعدة / قانون

Ex. Do you know the rules of the game?

• role دور

Ex. Mothers play an important role in our success.

3 safe / save

• safe امن

Ex. It isn't safe to play with a knife.

• save ينقذ / يوفر

Ex. The fisherman jumped in the water and saved the child.

Ex. We save money to buy a present for our mom.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She brushes her teeth
a. every day b. everyday c. day d. on day
2. The teacher's is to help students learn.
a. rule b. role c. roll d. ruler
3. "No running" is a in the school.
a. rule b. role c. roll d. road
4. Wear a helmet to stay while you ride a bike.
a. safe b. save c. awake d. alive



Reading



SB Page (88)



استمع إلى النصوص

School Handbook: Being a Global Citizen

At our school, we **believe**⁽¹⁾ every student is part of a **community**⁽²⁾ and is a **citizen**⁽³⁾ of the world. As **global citizens**⁽⁴⁾, we must follow each **rule**⁽⁵⁾ and **law**⁽⁶⁾ to keep everyone safe and happy. We mustn't be unkind or **unfair**⁽⁷⁾ to others. Instead, we should be kind and help each other every day.

To **protect**⁽⁸⁾ our planet, we must keep our school clean and save water and **electricity**⁽⁹⁾. We mustn't waste food or throw **rubbish**⁽¹⁰⁾ on the ground. We also must encourage students to **volunteer**⁽¹¹⁾ to help others in need and to protect animals and **nature**⁽¹²⁾.

Being a good global citizen means showing **respect**⁽¹³⁾ to everyone, listening to others, and working together in **peace**⁽¹⁴⁾. We believe it is fair to treat all people with care, no matter where they come from. It is important to respect different **cultures**⁽¹⁵⁾, languages, and **traditions**⁽¹⁶⁾.

In our school, we learn to solve problems together and think about how we can **improve**⁽¹⁷⁾ our world. We must remember that even small actions can make a big difference. We can plant trees, **share**⁽¹⁸⁾ with others, and help keep our community safe and clean.

١. نعتقد
٢. مجتمع
٣. مواطن
٤. مواطن عالمي
٥. قاعدة
٦. قانون
٧. غير عادل
٨. يحمي
٩. كهرباء
١٠. قمامة
١١. يتطوع
١٢. الطبيعة
١٣. يحترم
١٤. السلام
١٥. الثقافات
١٦. التقاليد
١٧. يحسن

At our school, you are not just a student; you are a young **leader**⁽¹⁹⁾ who can change the world by making good **choices**⁽²⁰⁾ and caring for others.

١٨. قائد
١٩. اختيارات



Listen to Mariam and Ziad talking about a school project

Mariam : Hi Ziad! Are you **ready**⁽¹⁾ for the new project?

Ziad : I think so. Is it the one about helping our **community**⁽²⁾?

Mariam : Yes! We're planning to clean the park and plant flowers.

Ziad : **That sounds fun**⁽³⁾! Why are we doing this?

Mariam : Because we are learning about global **citizenship**⁽⁴⁾. It means we must help others and take care of the **environment**⁽⁵⁾.

Ziad : I see. So we are volunteering.

Mariam : Exactly! It's our **responsibility**⁽⁶⁾ as students.

Ziad : I like it. We can also make **posters**⁽⁷⁾ about keeping places clean.

Mariam : Great idea! We can show respect by working together kindly.

Ziad : When are we doing it?

Mariam : On Saturday morning. Don't forget your **gloves**⁽⁸⁾.

Ziad : I won't. Let's make a big **impact**⁽⁹⁾.

١- جاهز
٢- مجتمع
٣- هذا يبدو رائعا
٤- مواطنة
٥- البيئة
٦- المسؤولية
٧- ملصقات
٨- قفازات
٩- تأثير



Listen to a text about Hani

My friend Hani is a great global citizen. He **respects**⁽¹⁾ people from all cultures and loves learning about the world. Last week, he **joined**⁽²⁾ a community **project**⁽³⁾ to plant trees in our town. Hani says, "Everyone can **contribute**⁽⁴⁾ to a better planet."

He also **collects**⁽⁵⁾ clothes to give to people in need. His

actions⁽⁶⁾ show how to care for **others**⁽⁷⁾ and the environment.

Hani **inspires**⁽⁸⁾ me to be a global citizen, too. I want to respect others and help my community, just like him, to make the world a **better place**⁽⁹⁾.

١- يحترمه
٢- انضم الى
٣- مشروع
٤- يساهم
٥- يجمع
٦- أعماله
٧- الآخرون
٨- يلهم
٩- مكان أفضل

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bit by Bit Exercises

1. I want to make the world a better place as a
 a. hunter b. global citizen c. chef d. student
2. We must the trees and animals.
 a. hurt b. protect c. forget d. count
3. It's that people are paying different prices for the same tickets.
 a. fair b. unfair c. happy d. easy
4. My teacher always tries to me to do my best.
 a. stop b. hide c. encourage d. sleep.
5. I hope my grades will this term.
 a. worsen b. improve c. disappear d. run
6. You must follow the when you play.
 a. game b. lights c. rules d. clouds
7. Our country has unique traditions and
 a. river b. culture c. mountain d. building
8. It's against the to drive very fast in small streets.
 a. sun b. law c. chair d. bird
9. Wear your seatbelt to be while driving.
 a. unsafe b. safe c. fast d. slow
10. We live on the Earth.
 a. star b. moon c. planet d. rock
11. Everyone wants to live in
 a. war b. peace c. loud d. sadness
12. It's important to other people's opinions.
 a. ignore b. fight c. respect d. forget
13. Many homes use for lights and heat.
 a. water b. electricity c. gas d. air
14. Always speak to older people.
 a. rudely b. loudly c. politely d. quietly
15. We went to the countryside to enjoy the beauty of
 a. city b. house c. nature d. school

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

improve - protect - rules - respect - citizen

Being a global ① means we think about everyone, not just ourselves. We should all work to ② our planet and make sure things are not unfair for anyone. It's good to ③ each other to learn and improve every day. We should also follow the ④ that help us live peacefully, and always respect different cultures.



Language

قواعد لغوية

1. Must / mustn't

فعل في المصدر + must/mustn't + (فاعل كل الضمائر) Subject

- We use **must** to talk about things that are necessary to do.

- نستخدم (**must**) للإشارة إلى أن شيئاً ما ضروري أو إلزامي يجب القيام به

Ex. I **must** study well for the exam."

(يجب عليّ أن أذاكر جيداً للامتحان.)

Ex. "You **must** wear a seatbelt in the car."

(يجب عليك ارتداء حزام الأمان في السيارة.)

Ex. "We **must** finish this report by tomorrow."

(يجب علينا إنهاء هذا التقرير بحلول الغد.)

- We use **mustn't** to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

- نستخدم (**mustn't**) للإشارة إلى أن شيئاً ما ممنوع أو غير مسموح به.

Ex. "You **mustn't** smoke in the building."

(يجب ألا تدخن في المبنى.)

Ex. "We **mustn't** be late for the meeting."

(يجب ألا نتأخر عن الاجتماع.)

Ex. "He **mustn't** drive without a license."

(يجب ألا يقود السيارة بدون رخصة.)

2- Review of tenses مراجعة الأزمنة

- راجع أزمنة المضارع البسيط و المضارع المستمر و الماضي البسيط في الوحدات السابقة.

- My uncle **lives** in the USA.

- She **is drawing** a picture now.

- They **traveled** to Aswan last winter.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We be kind to each other every day.

a. mustn't

b. might

c. must

d. aren't

2. We _____ respect different cultures.
a. can't b. must c. won't d. shouldn't
3. We _____ waste water or electricity.
a. must b. mustn't c. will d. can
4. We _____ plant trees to help the environment.
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. shouldn't
5. We _____ throw rubbish on the ground
a. mustn't b. won't c. must d. aren't

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. You _____ clean your room every day.
a. not b. must c. won't d. shouldn't
7. We _____ be quiet in the library.
a. mustn't b. might c. must d. aren't
8. She _____ finish her homework before she plays.
a. won't b. mustn't c. can't d. must
9. They _____ wear their seatbelts in the car.
a. mustn't b. must c. may not d. aren't
10. I _____ go to bed early tonight because I'm tired.
a. won't b. mustn't c. can't d. must
11. You _____ run on the road, it's dangerous.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. should
12. We _____ talk during the test.
a. must b. mustn't c. will d. can
13. He _____ forget his keys when he leaves.
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. should
14. They _____ play with matches.
a. must b. can c. will d. mustn't
15. I _____ be late for school, or I will miss the lesson.
a. must b. mustn't c. can d. will
16. You _____ listen to your parents.
a. mustn't b. won't c. must d. aren't
17. We _____ help each other when someone needs it.
a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. won't
18. She _____ drink water every day to stay healthy.
a. mustn't b. can't c. might not d. must
19. You _____ pick the flowers in the park.
a. must b. mustn't c. can d. should

20. He _____ shout at his friends, it's not polite.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. will
21. It _____ a great game and we won the cup.
a. is b. were c. was d. has
22. I never _____ sushi but my brother ate it.
a. try b. tried c. tries d. trying
23. I _____ sad when I lost my favorite pen.
a. feel b. feels c. feeling d. felt
24. _____ you watch the match yesterday?
a. Did b. Do c. Does d. Are
25. How old _____ you in 2022?
a. was b. did c. were d. are
26. I _____ my homework and went to bed.
a. do b. does c. doing d. did
27. They _____ football at the moment.
a. am playing b. is playing c. are playing d. was playing
28. Samy and his sister _____ a cake in the kitchen now.
a. are making b. is making c. make d. was making
29. Please be quiet , I _____ at the moment.
a. think b. am thinking c. thinking d. have thought
30. I _____ very hard this year.
a. work b. am working c. working d. was working

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

- He always _____ (go) to school by bus.
- Yesterday, she _____ (be) at the cinema with her sister.
- Marwa _____ (read) an interesting book at the moment.
- They _____ (must) play football in the street.
- He _____ (mustn't) study hard for the exam.
- He _____ (not go) to school yesterday.
- We _____ (collect) information before we started the project.

Bit by Bit Exercises

- The pharaohs _____ (build) the pyramids.
- I _____ (have) to hurry because I was late for school.
- Ali _____ (caught) the train because he got up late.

11. There (were) no flour left to make cakes.
12. Are the boys (play) football at the moment ?
13. Listen, someone (sing) in the street.
14. They (playing) tennis now.
15. Are you (visit) Aswan next Friday?

3 Rewrite the following sentences using must/mustn't.

1. You should avoid playing in the street.

2. You shouldn't eat fast food.

3. You should do exercise to be healthy.

Speaking

Ask and answer about a good citizen

What makes a good citizen?

السؤال والإجابة عن ما الذي يجعل من المواطن مواطناً صالحاً؟

Question

Answer

1- What is one important quality of a good citizen?

ما هي أهم صفة للمواطن؟

- A good citizen is honest. They always tell the truth

المواطن الصالح صادق، يقول الصدق دائماً.

2-How does a good citizen act towards others?

كيف يتصرف المواطن الصالح مع الآخرين؟

- A good citizen is kind and helpful.

المواطن الصالح طيب القلب ومتعاون.

3- What does a good citizen do for their community?

ماذا يفعل المواطن الصالح لمجتمعه؟

- A good citizen is responsible and might do volunteering.

المواطن الصالح مسؤول، وقد يتطوع.

4- What do good citizens feel about right and wrong?

ما هو شعور المواطنين الصالحين تجاه الصواب والخطأ؟

- Good citizens love justice. They want things to be right and fair for everyone.

يُحِبُّ المواطنون الصالحون العدالة، ويريدون أن يكون كل شيء على ما يرام ومنصفاً للجميع.

5- How does a good citizen show they are part of the community?

كيف يُظهر المواطن الصالح انتماءه للمجتمع؟

- They show kind and helpful behavior to all.

يظهر سلوكاً طيباً ومتعاوناً مع الجميع.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 A. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Every game has a main that tells us how to play.
a. song b. rule c. picture d. toy
- We should not food; we should eat it all.
a. buy b. share c. waste d. cook
- Different countries have different with special traditions.
a. animals b. weather c. cultures d. cars
- You must the school rules.
a. break b. follow c. hide d. make
- It's important to obey the to keep everyone safe.
a. game b. law c. cloud d. flower
- You throw rubbish in the park.
a. must b. mustn't c. can d. should
- To be healthy, you eat fruits and vegetables.
a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. won't
- Omar walking to school now?
a. Are b. Does c. Is d. Am
- Aliaa is with her friends in the park.
a. walks b. walk c. walked d. walking
- What Omnia? – I'm getting ready to go out.
a. do you do b. were you doing c. are you doing d. have you done
- Ahmed his homework now. He is watching TV.
a. is doing b. was doing c. isn't doing d. weren't doing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

citizen - planted - community - project - join

Our leader started a new ① to help our town. He asked us all to ② in. First, we decided to clean the park. We worked hard to make sure there was no rubbish on the ground. Then, we ③ new trees and flowers. We want to teach the children about keeping our ④ nice.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Look! She (cook) the meat .
- He (walk) to school every day
- We (gets) up early every morning .

Unit 6 Global citizen

4. Last summer, I (do) many activities.
5. First, we (say) the alphabet then we wrote it.
6. What did you (did) yesterday?
7. Fatma (reads) a story and she liked it.
8. We (mustn't) always be kind to others.
9. You (can) make loud noises late at night.
10. He must (finishing) his homework before dinner.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Sara are talking about what makes a good citizen

Ali : Sara, what is a "good citizen"?

Sara : A good citizen is someone who helps their community.

Ali : Oh, so like, being nice?

Sara : Yes, exactly! Being nice, being kind, and showing

① to everyone.

Ali : What does a good citizen do?

Sara : Well, a good citizen follows the ②

They don't throw rubbish on the ground. They try to keep our town clean.

Ali : So they keep the places clean.

Sara : Right! And they try to ③

our planet. They might help plant trees or save electricity.

They also ④ others to do good things.

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How to make a difference in your family and your community"

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- How can you make a difference at home?
- 2- What should you do?
- 3- How can you make a difference in the community?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- At home , I should help with
- I also should show respect to
- I use flashcards to remind myself of



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	trophy (n)	كاس
ocean (n)	محيط	quality (n)	جودة
danger (n)	خطر	right (adj)	حق/صحيح
environment (n)	بيئة	dream team	فريق الحلم
impact (n)	تأثير	participate (d)	يشارك
reusable (adj)	يمكن إعادة استخدامه	act (ed)	يمثل/يتصرف
diversity (n)	تنوع	reduce (d)	يقلل
clean-ups (n)	عمليات التنظيف	connect (ed)	يوصل
generations (n)	أجيال	depend (ed)	يعتمد
creature (n)	مخلوق	invent (ed)	يخترع
judge (n)	قاضي	create (d)	يخلق/ينشئ
value (n)	قيمة		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

items (n)	عناصر	proudly (adv)	بفخر
scientist (n)	عالم	real (adj)	حقيقي
invention fair (n)	معرض الاختراعات	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى
colorful (adj)	ملون	competition (n)	منافسة
tent (n)	خيمة	curious (adj)	فضولي
excitement (n)	اثارة	cooperation (n)	تعاون
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	unity (n)	اتحاد
confidently (adv)	بثقة	entertain (ed)	يسلي
purpose (n)	غرض	nod (ded)	يومئ برأسه
impressed (n)	متأثر	fill (ed)	يملئ
courage (n)	شجاعة	present (ed)	يقدم
though	بالرغم من	clap (ped)	يصفق
prize (n)	جائزة		

Expressions & Prepositions

in danger	في خطر	not only..... but also	ليس فقط لكن أيضا
around the world	حول العالم	feel sad	يشعر بالحزن
participate in	يشارك في	carry the values into the future	يحمل هذه القيم الى المستقبل
all in all	اجمالا / على العموم	It's our duty to	انه واجبنا ان
depend on	يعتمد على		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
danger	خطر	risk - threat		safety	امان
increase	يزيد / زيادة	rise		decrease	ينقص / نقص
beautiful	جميل	smart		ugly	قبيح
terrible	فظيع	very bad		wonderful	رائع

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تحول الصفة الى عكسها	unkind / unfair
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	global
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	politely

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
leave	يغادر	left	left
show	يعرض	showed	shown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
become	يصبح	became	become



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 invent / discover

• invent

يخترع

- شيء من العدم.

Ex. Graham Bell **invented** the telephone in 1876.

• discover

يكتشف

- شيء موجود لكن غير معلوم.

Ex. The planet Pluto was **discovered** in 1930.

2) filled with / full

- يستخدم التعبيران بمعنى ملىء أو مملوء بـ

Ex. The room was **filled with** smoke.

Ex. The hall was **full of** people.

3) waste

• **waste (n)** مخلفات

Ex. We should reduce **waste** at home and at school.

• **waste (v) wasted / wasted**

يضيع وقت / يبذر مال

Ex. Don't **waste** your time and start work.

Ex. We shouldn't **waste** our money on junk food.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Let's not any more time on this.
a. make b. paste c. waste d. do
- This is a film of humor.
a. full b. fool c. failed d. filled
- Scientists have a new type of bacteria.
a. made b. discovered c. invented d. grown

Reading SB Page (93)

استمع إلى النص

A Global Responsibility

Our **oceans**⁽¹⁾ are in danger, and we must **act**⁽²⁾ now to protect them. It is our global **responsibility**⁽³⁾ to save the sea animals and plants that live in this beautiful **environment**⁽⁴⁾. To start off, we mustn't **throw**⁽⁵⁾ rubbish into the sea or **leave**⁽⁶⁾ plastic on the beach because they have a terrible **impact**⁽⁷⁾ on sea life and water quality. We must show respect for the oceans and for the **rights**⁽⁸⁾ of all people to have clean water and beaches. We mustn't use plastic bottles and bags every day. Instead, we can use **reusable**⁽⁹⁾ items to help protect the oceans.

- المحيطات
- يتصرف
- مسؤولية
- البيئة
- يرمي
- يغادر
- تأثير
- حقوق
- يعاد استخدامها

Oceans **connect**⁽¹⁰⁾ people from many **cultures**⁽¹¹⁾ and countries, showing the beauty of **diversity**⁽¹²⁾ around the world. We all share the sea, so it is our **duty**⁽¹³⁾ to keep it safe. We can **participate**⁽¹⁴⁾ in **beach clean-ups**⁽¹⁵⁾, teach others about saving the oceans, and **reduce waste**⁽¹⁶⁾ at home and at school.

All in all⁽¹⁷⁾, every small action **makes a difference**⁽¹⁸⁾. If we all work together, we can protect the oceans for future **generations**⁽¹⁹⁾ and for every living **creature**⁽²⁰⁾ that **depends on**⁽²¹⁾ the sea.

١. تربط
٢. ثقافات
٣. تنوع
٤. واجبنا
٥. يشارك
٦. حملات تنظيف
٧. الشواطئ
٨. نقلال المخلفات
٩. اجمالاً
١٠. يحدث فرق
١١. اجمالاً
١٢. مخلوق
١٣. يعتمد على

Story Time

The Dream Team



Before you read, discuss in pairs

Chapter
THREE

A Team of
Tomorrow

On the day of the **Invention Fair**⁽¹⁾, the school playground was **filled with**⁽²⁾ colorful tents and curious **visitors**⁽³⁾. Teams presented their projects with excitement.

Sara and her team explained their Water-Saving Machine clearly and **confidently**⁽⁴⁾. The **judges**⁽⁵⁾ smiled and asked, "Why did you choose this project?" Sara answered, "We wanted to **create**⁽⁶⁾ something with a **purpose**⁽⁷⁾ to help our village."

The judges nodded, **impressed**⁽⁸⁾ not only by the machine but also by the **teamwork**⁽⁹⁾ and respect the group showed.

Though another team won first **prize**⁽¹⁰⁾, Sara and her friends didn't feel sad. Their teacher **clapped**⁽¹¹⁾ proudly and said, "You are the real winners. You showed honesty, **cooperation**⁽¹²⁾, and teamwork."

١. معرض الاختراعات
٢. مملوء بـ
٣. زائرون
٤. بثقة
٥. المحكمين/القضاة
٦. يبدع
٧. هدف
٨. متاثرين
٩. عمل جماعي
١٠. جائزة
١١. صفق
١٢. تعاون



These values are more important than any trophy⁽¹³⁾. The children smiled and held hands. They knew they had created something meaningful⁽¹⁴⁾ not just for the competition, but for their community and for themselves. They promised to carry these values⁽¹⁵⁾ into the future and help others with kindness, respect, and courage⁽¹⁶⁾. From that day, they became known as "The Dream Team" in their village-a team with heart, purpose, and unity⁽¹⁷⁾.

١٣. كأس
١٤. ذو معنى
١٥. قيم
١٦. شجاعة
١٧. اتحاد

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

- The school playground was filled with colorful _____.
a. tents b. flowers c. boxes d. tools
- Sara and her team explained their machine clearly and _____.
a. global b. confidently c. asleep d. slow
- The word "trophy" means _____.
a. a title b. a prize awarded c. a competition d. a machine

Bit by Bit Exercises

- It is your _____ to do your homework.
a. ocean b. diversity c. responsibility d. danger
- The _____ is very big, and many fish live there.
a. garden b. flat c. tower d. ocean
- The road was icy, so there was a _____ of slipping.
a. creature b. danger c. judge d. trophy
- We should take care of our _____.
a. quality b. impact c. environment d. trophy
- His words had a big _____ on me.
a. danger b. quality c. impact d. trophy
- This bag is _____ because you can use it many times.
a. reusable b. dangerous c. hard d. cheap
- Cooperation and honesty are great _____ to share in our community.
a. impacts b. values c. diversities d. dangers

11. We organized beach _____, the beach looks much better now.
 a. responsibilities b. clean-ups c. generations d. environments
12. We always learn from the past _____.
 a. generations b. impacts c. environments d. clean-ups
13. She won the gold _____, so she was very happy.
 a. impact b. trophy c. danger d. garden
14. The _____ said that our team is the winner.
 a. volunteers b. helpers c. lawyers d. judges

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

impact - diversity - ocean - danger - environment

Saving our ① _____ is a big responsibility for everyone. Plastic waste is a huge ② _____ to the marine environment and every creature living there. This pollution has a bad ③ _____ on all generations. We must use reusable items more often. Joining clean-ups helps a lot. Protecting the ④ _____ of life in the sea keeps our planet healthy.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Raneem : Hi Aliaa. Why are you looking worried?

Aliaa : Hi Raneem. I'm worried about our oceans.

Raneem : The ocean is so important. But it's in danger from trash.

Aliaa : Yes, plastic has a bad impact on the marine ① _____.
 We need to reduce how much plastic we use.

Raneem : Exactly! We should use ② _____ bags and bottles.

Aliaa : And we can all ③ _____
 in beach clean-ups.

Raneem : That's a great idea! Imagine if we had a Dream team of people working together.

Aliaa : Yes! If everyone acted to improve the quality of ocean water, all the amazing ④ _____ of sea life would be safe.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Connectors الروابط

because - so - although - but

because (to show cause)

• لأن : تستخدم لإعطاء السبب.

نتيجة + because + سبب

Ex. I didn't give up **because** I believe in myself.

so (to show result)

• لذلك : تستخدم لإعطاء النتيجة.

سبب + so + نتيجة

Ex. I worked hard **so** I came first in the exam.

although (to show contrast)

• بالرغم من : تستخدم لإعطاء التناقض و التضاد.

Ex. **Although** I was sick, I went to school.

but (to show contrast)

• لكن : تستخدم لإعطاء التناقض و التضاد.

Ex. I was sick **but** I went to school.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

- I was tired, I went to bed early.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
- "....." it was raining, we played football .
a. Because b. So c. Although d. But
- He stayed home he had a fever.
a. so b. although c. because d. but
- She studied hard she passed the exam.
a. because b. although c. so d. but

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. It was raining, I took my umbrella.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
6. She wanted to learn, she read many books.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
7. He was very strong, he could lift the heavy box.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
8. I went to bed early, I had to wake up early the next day.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
9. She tried hard, she did not win the race.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
10. The sun was shining, it was still cold outside.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
11. He studied a lot, he failed the test.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
12. The food was delicious, I ate it all.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
13. She was hungry, she had just eaten.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
14. The water was cold, I still went for a swim.
a. although b. because c. so d. but

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. He was hungry, (but) he made a sandwich.
2. We didn't go out (although) It was very cold.
3. I was tired (so) I kept working.

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. The road was wet, (although) I drove slowly.
5. He felt tired, (so) he went to the gym.

6. It was sunny, _____ (because) it was very cold.
7. She missed the bus, _____ (but) she was late for school.
8. He practiced a lot, _____ (because) he did not win the game.
9. I was thirsty, _____ (although) I drank some water.
10. They were hungry, _____ (so) they didn't eat.
11. She ran fast, _____ (because) she did not catch the train.
12. He studied hard, _____ (but) he got good grades.

General Exercises



on Lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We want to _____ waste, so we recycle paper and plastic.
a. act b. reduce c. depend d. connect
2. A new road was built _____ and the two towns are now _____.
a. created b. participated c. connected d. acted
3. Your score will _____ on your effort.
a. act b. depend c. reduce d. connect
4. She _____ a beautiful garden and many flowers grew there.
a. connected b. invented c. depended d. created
5. We built a sandcastle on the _____ near the ocean.
a. tent b. project c. beach d. scientist
6. Students showed their new ideas at the _____ last week.
a. beach b. invention fair c. project d. feel sad
7. The parrot had very _____ feathers of red and blue.
a. clearly b. confidently c. colorful d. sad
8. We slept in a _____ when we went camping in the forest.
a. project b. tent c. beach d. scientist
9. There was a lot of _____ before the big game started.
a. clearly b. confidently c. excitement d. sad
10. Our class worked on a science _____ about plants.
a. tent b. project c. beach d. scientist

11. He spoke so everyone could understand his words.
a. confidently b. clearly c. sadly d. happily
12. He was happy he smiled at me.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
13. The traffic was bad, I arrived late for work.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
14. He was tired, he kept working.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
15. I couldn't sleep, the music was too loud.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
16. She has a small car, she can park easily.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
17. He practiced a lot, he didn't win the prize.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
18. The sun was shining, it was very cold outside.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
19. She likes apples, she doesn't like oranges.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
20. He studied hard, he passed the exam easily.
a. although b. because c. so d. but

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

judge - participate - play - trophy - project

The school is holding an Invention Fair this year. Many students will ① and show their clever ideas. Each ② must be something new, something they created. A scientist will be the ③ looking for good quality and useful ideas. Everyone feels excitement about the day. It's a chance to invent something cool and learn a lot. Winners will get a special ④

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Alex and Mia are talking about the school invention competition

Alex : Hi Mia! Are you joining the school invention ①

Mia : Hi Alex! Yes, I am! I'm so excited to make something new.

Alex : Me too! What's your idea for a project?

Mia : I want to ②a way to help plants grow faster.
I've been reading a lot about it.

Alex : That's cool! I'm trying to create a new kind of light.

Mia : Wow, that sounds hard! But I think you can do it. Our teacher, Mrs. Green,
is a good ③so she'll give fair scores.

Alex : Yeah, I hope so! Do you think many students will ④?

4 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The Invention Fair at your school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- When was the Invention Fair?
- How many students participated in the Fair?
- What did these students do?



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	user name	اسم المستخدم
post (n)	منشور	planet (n)	كوكب
catchy (adj)	جذاب	roundtable (n)	مائدة مستديرة
attention (n)	انتباه	intro (n)	مقدمة
respectful (adj)	محترم للآخرين		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

trash (n)	قمامة	success (n)	نجاح
posters (n)	ملصقات	idea (n)	فكرة
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	circle (n)	دائرة
own (adj)	خاص	like (d)	يحب
global (adj)	عالمي	pass (ed)	يمرر/يناول
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري	plan (ned)	يخطط
symbol (n)	شعار	design (ed)	يصمم
each (determiner)	كل		



Definitions

volunteer (v)	To do something helpful without being paid
rules (n)	A set of instructions people must follow
respect (v)	To show care or honor for someone or something
impact (n)	The effect something has on others
responsibility (n)	A duty or something you must do

Expressions & Prepositions

catch attention	يجذب الانتباه	feel proud to	يشعر بالفخر أن
keep doing	يستمر في فعل	make a big difference	يحدث فرق كبير
stop littering	يتوقف عن القاء القمامة	people in need	الناس ذوي الحاجة
add fun	يضيف متعة	feel included	يشعر بالانتماء
care about	يهتم بـ	look back at	ينظر للوراء الى
clean up the park	ينظف الحديقة	underneath	تحت
the Dos and Don'ts	ما يجب فعله و ما لا يجب فعله	picked up	يلتقط
take responsibility	يتولى المسؤولية	at least	على الأقل



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
catchy	جذاب	popular		boring	ممل
success	النجاح	win		failure	فشل
fun	المتعة	pleasure		sadness	حزن
underneath	تحت	below		above	أعلى
stop	يتوقف	end-quit		start	يبدأ
like	يحب	love		dislike	يكره

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
ful	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	respectful
-ity	تحول الصفة الى اسم	responsibility
-ce	تحول الصفة او الفعل الى اسم	difference

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	يأخذ	took	taken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) planet / plant

• planet كوكب

Ex. Earth is the third planet in our solar system.

• plant يزرع

Ex. We've planted tomatoes and carrots in the garden.

• plant نبات

Ex. Yara always waters the plants on her balcony.

2) everyone

كل شخص (يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد)

Ex. Everyone likes her.

Ex. Is everyone ready to go?

3) proud to / proud of

• proud to فخور أن (يأتي بعدها فعل مصدر)

Ex. I felt proud to help my community.

• proud of v+ ing فخور ب (يأتي بعدها اسم أو)

Ex. He's proud of his son.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Earth we live on is our
a. planet b. plant c. school d. house
- grow in the ground and needs water.
a. Books b. Planets c. Plants d. Toys
- should help keep our planet clean?
a. Everyone b. Only teachers c. Just parents d. No one
- "I am my recycling project."
a. proud to b. proud of c. afraid of d. running to



Writing Skills

Writing a social media post

1- Start with a catchy intro. Say something interesting, funny or exciting to catch attention.

1- ابدأ بمقدمة جذابة. قل شيئاً شيقاً أو مضحكاً أو مثيراً للاهتمام لجذب الانتباه.

2- Use clear and short sentences.

2- استخدم جملًا واضحة وقصيرة.

3- Use emojis and symbols. Emojis can add fun and feeling, but don't use too many.

٣- استخدم الرموز التعبيرية. يمكن للرموز التعبيرية أن تُضفي لمسة من المرح والمشاعر، ولكن لا تُكثر منها.

4- Be positive and kind. Be respectful. Think before you post.

٤- كن إيجابيًا ولطيفًا. كن مُحترمًا. فكّر قبل النشر.

5- Check your post. Make sure your spelling and grammar are correct.

٥- راجع منشورك. تأكد من صحة الإملاء والقواعد.

Are You a Global Citizen?

Being a global citizen means caring about others and helping the world .

Last month , my school started a "Clean Up the Park" project. Students and teachers picked up trash and planted flowers. I felt proud to help my community. We also made posters to teach people about recycling. I learned that we all share one planet, and small actions can make a big difference. A global citizen must show respect, take responsibility, and help others. I want to keep doing more to help the environment and people in need. Let's build a world where everyone feels included.

Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

• The colon (:) النقطتان

- We Use a colon (:) نستخدم النقطتين

1- To introduce a list: -ل لتقديم قائمة:

- I need to buy many things: eggs, milk, and bread.

2- To explain or add more detail: -للتوضيح أو إضافة المزيد من التفاصيل:

- He had one goal: to win the race.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bit by Bit Exercises

1. Many people use social _____ to talk to friends online.

- a. books b. phones c. media d. cars

2. She likes to _____ photos of her cat online.

- a. draw b. read c. post d. eat

3. That song has a very _____ tune; I can't stop singing it!

- a. long b. sad c. catchy d. slow

4. The loud noise got everyone's _____.

- a. sleep b. food c. attention d. thoughts

5. Always be _____ when you talk to older people.

- a. rude b. angry c. respectful d. loud

6. Our _____ is a big ball that goes around the sun.

- a. house b. country c. planet d. moon

7. The teacher gave a short _____ before the lesson started.

- a. memo b. ending c. intro d. break

8. We put a big _____ on the wall for the party.

- a. chair b. table c. poster d. box

9. We like to play games to _____ fun to our day.

- a. remove b. spoil c. add d. forget

10. My parents always _____ about me.

- a. ignore b. dislike c. care d. hate

11. It's important to _____ responsibility for your actions.

- a. run away b. ignore c. take d. blame

12. Please, stop _____ and put your trash in the bin.

- a. throwing b. making c. littering d. playing

2

Write a social media post about the Dos and Don'ts of being a citizen:

1. 2023. 12. 21. 12:00

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to funny pictures on social media.
a. post b. trash c. own d. circle
2. A good name is easy to remember.
a. planet b. user c. global d. roundtable
3. We should always be online.
a. emoji b. respectful c. own d. success
4. The recycling is three arrows in a circle.
a. intro b. symbol c. idea d. attention
5. A title makes people want to read more.
a. catchy b. global c. each d. posters
6. We should put paper in the bin.
a. recycling b. own c. emoji d. success
7. She used a happy in her message.
a. planet b. emoji c. idea d. circle
8. The teacher asked student to write their name.
a. catchy b. each c. global d. own

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

symbol - respectful - post - catchy - planet

Many people use social media to share their ideas. When you post something, try to make it ① to get attention. Always be ② to others. Choose a good user name that you like. Remember, we all live on this one ③ so let's be kind online. Sometimes a fun emoji can be a great ④ of how you feel.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Speaker A: What is a global citizen's job for our planet?

Speaker B: A global citizen should ① about the Earth.

Speaker A: Should they throw ② on the ground?

Speaker B: No, they shouldn't throw litter at all.

Speaker A: What about learning?

Speaker B: They should ③ about other cultures.

Speaker A: And what shouldn't they do about new ideas?

Speaker B: They shouldn't close their mind to new ④

Speaker A: So, be open and help the world!

Speaker B: Exactly!

Review on Unit 6

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

global citizen *	مواطن عالمي	reusable (adj)	يمكن إعادة استخدامه
protect (ed)	يحمي	diversity (n)	تنوع
unfair (adj)	غير عادل	clean-ups (n)	عمليات التنظيف
rule (n)	قاعدة	generations (n)	أجيال
culture (n)	ثقافة	creature (n)	مخلوق
law (n)	قانون	judge (n)	قاضي
safe (adj)	امن	value (n)	قيمة
planet (n)	كوكب	trophy (n)	كاس
peace (n)	سلام	quality (n)	جودة
respect (ed)	يحترمه	right (adj)	حق/صحيح
ground (n)	أرضية	dream team	فريق الحلم
improve (d)	يحسن	participate (d)	يشارك
encourage (d)	يشجع	act (ed)	يمثل/يتصرف
solve (d)	يحل	reduce (d)	يقلل
waste (d)	يضيع	connect (ed)	يوصل
follow (ed)	يتبع	depend (ed)	يعتمد
believe (d)	يصدق/يعتقد	invent (ed)	يخترع
change (d)	يغير	create (d)	يخلق/ينشئ
save (d)	ينقذ	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
treat (ed)	يعامل	post (n)	منشور
volunteer (ed)	يتطوع	catchy (adj)	جذاب
rubbish (n)	زباله / قمامة	attention (n)	انتباه
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	respectful (adj)	محترم للآخرين
ocean (n)	محيط	user name	اسم المستخدم
danger (n)	خطر	planet (n)	كوكب
environment (n)	بيئة	roundtable (n)	مائدة مستديرة
impact (n)	تأثير	intro (n)	مقدمة



Language

قواعد لغوية

1. Must / mustn't

فعل في المصدر + must/mustn't + (فاعل (كل الضمائر) Subject

- We use **must** to talk about things that are necessary to do.

- تُستخدم (**must**) للإشارة إلى أن شيئًا ما ضروري أو إلزامي يجب القيام به

Ex. I **must** study well for the exam."

(يجب عليّ أن أذاكر جيدًا للامتحان.)

Ex. "You **must** wear a seatbelt in the car."

(يجب عليك ارتداء حزام الأمان في السيارة.)

Ex. "We **must** finish this report by tomorrow."

(يجب علينا إنهاء هذا التقرير بحلول الغد.)

- We use **mustn't** to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

"تُستخدم (**mustn't**) للإشارة إلى أن شيئًا ما ممنوع أو غير مسموح به.

Ex. "You **mustn't** smoke in the building."

(يجب ألا تدخن في المبنى.)

Ex. "We **mustn't** be late for the meeting."

(يجب ألا نتأخر عن الاجتماع.)

Ex. "He **mustn't** drive without a license."

(يجب ألا يقود السيارة بدون رخصة.)

2- Review of tenses مراجعة الأزمنة

- راجع أزمنة المضارع البسيط و المضارع المستمر و الماضي البسيط في الوحدات السابقة.

- My uncle **lives** in the USA.

- She **is drawing** a picture now.

- They **traveled** to Aswan last winter.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Connectors الروابط

because - so - although - but

because (to show cause)

• لأن : تستخدم لإعطاء السبب.

نتيجة + **because** + سبب

Ex. I didn't give up **because** I believe in myself.

so (to show result)

• لذلك : تستخدم لإعطاء النتيجة.

سبب + **so** + نتيجة

Ex. I worked hard **so** I came first in the exam.

although (to show contrast)

• بالرغم من : تستخدم لإعطاء التناقض و التضاد.

Ex. **Although** I was sick, I went to school.

but (to show contrast)

• لكن : تستخدم لإعطاء التناقض و التضاد.

Ex. I was sick **but** I went to school.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

You can make a real difference, starting in your own home. In your family, help with the housework, listen to others, and always offer support. I also should show respect and kindness to everyone in the family every day. For your community, begin by keeping public spaces clean. Be polite to everyone you meet. Consider volunteering for local events or helping elderly neighbors.

Lessons 3 & 4

Last month, our school held an Invention Fair. About 50 students joined with their projects. Each student made something useful from old things. Some created toys from plastic bottles, others made bags from old clothes. We showed our work to teachers and friends. Everyone liked the clever ideas. The fair taught us how to reuse trash and help Earth. It was fun to see what we could make!

Lessons 5 & 6

A global citizen must respect the diversity of cultures and beliefs of others, and he must act responsibly to protect our shared environment. He must try to understand how his actions can impact people around the world. A global citizen must reduce waste, recycle, and conserve resources. He must educate himself on global issues and solutions.

Al-Azhar Test

A global citizen is a person who understands that we all live on one planet. This person cares about people in other countries, not just their own. They believe in treating everyone fairly, no matter where they come from. A global citizen also tries to protect the environment for everyone. In short, they act like a good neighbor to all people around the world.

Test on Unit 6

Keeping our oceans clean is very important for our planet and all the animals that live in the sea. We can all help by not throwing trash on the beach or into the water. Plastic bags, bottles, and straws are especially harmful to sea turtles and fish. . We should also try to use less plastic in our daily lives. When we go to the store, we can use reusable bags instead of plastic ones.

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What was the project about at the invention fair?

- a. Cooking with plastic bottles b. Saving the ocean
c. Building a bigger tent d. Making new trophies

2. What did the judges like about the projects?

- a. How expensive they were b. Creative ideas to help the environment
c. The size of the tents d. How quickly they were made

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Adel and Badr are talking about good citizens

Adel : What makes a good citizen?

Badr : A good citizen ① rules, like waiting in line.

Adel : What else?

Badr : They help others, like picking up trash.

Adel : That's nice! Do they have to be kind?

Badr : Yes! A good citizen is ② to everyone.

Adel : Should they listen to teachers?

Badr : Of course! Listening is important.

Adel : Can kids be good ③ too?

Badr : Yes! Even kids can be good citizens.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We found a flat piece of land where we could put our

- a. attention b. tent c. fun d. post

2. The songs were both _____ and original.
 a. needy b. healthy c. tall d. catchy
3. Recycling is important to help _____ our environment.
 a. waste b. protect c. treat d. solve
4. We _____ listen to our parents' advice.
 a. mustn't b. won't c. must d. aren't
5. He studied hard, _____ his marks were bad.
 a. although b. because c. so d. but

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Being a good citizen means helping others and following rules. Respect your family, teachers, and neighbors. Always be kind and honest. Keep your surroundings clean by throwing trash in bins. Follow traffic rules and wait for your turn in lines. Help those in need, like the elderly or younger children. Vote when you grow up to have a say in your country. Obey laws and pay taxes on time. Protect nature by saving water and planting trees. A good citizen works hard, stays informed, and makes their community better. Small actions can create a big positive change!

A. Answer the following questions:

- How can small actions, like saving water or planting trees, help the community?

- Why is it important to follow rules and laws as a citizen?

- What are some ways you can show kindness and honesty in your daily life?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is one way to be a good citizen? _____
 a. Littering on the street b. Throwing trash in bins
 c. Ignoring traffic rules d. Avoiding voting
- Why should we help the elderly or younger children? _____
 a. Because it makes us popular b. Because it is a way to be a good citizen
 c. Because they will give us money d. Because the law forces us

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What (do) you study yesterday?
2. You (must) smoke at hospitals.
3. The question was difficult (so) he answered it.
4. My sister (cooked) lunch at the moment.

D: Writing**6** Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Global citizens"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 6

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What was the main topic of the group's meeting?

a. Cooking food	b. Planning a trip
c. Making new friends	d. Keeping parks clean
2. What did the group make with their own hands?

a. New chairs	b. Food for a party
c. Bright posters	d. Small toys
3. The idea for a clean park is a one.

a. secret	b. global	c. personal	d. local
-----------	-----------	-------------	----------

B- Listen and complete:

4. The group had a _____ meeting.
5. They talked about all the _____ and how they need more recycling.
6. With each person helping, we can have great _____.

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We used bright colors to _____ the picture.
a. draw b. erase c. paint d. hide
2. It's important to _____ responsibility for your actions.
a. run away b. ignore c. take d. blame

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shared - invented - air - competition - waste

Our school held an invention competition. Students made creative and useful things. Sara ❶ _____ a solar-powered fan that runs on sunlight. Ali made a pencil holder from recycled bottles to reduce ❷ _____. Other students also ❸ _____ their ideas, like a water-saving device and a lunchbox that keeps food warm. The teacher praised everyone for their hard work. The ❹ _____ was fun and taught us how to solve problems in simple ways.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every day, people post on social media to share ideas. To catch attention, use a catchy user name and fun emojis. Posters with bright colors and clear symbols work best. At a global roundtable, kids discussed recycling to help our planet. Their intro was short but powerful: "Stop trash-start recycling!" Each person shared their own idea in the circle. Some said, "Use less plastic." Others added, "Pick up litter." The group felt proud because their small actions led to big success. Being respectful online and in real life makes a difference. Together, we can make Earth cleaner!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What helps to catch attention on social media?
 - a. Long paragraphs
 - b. A catchy user name and fun emojis
 - c. No pictures
 - d. Complicated words
2. What did the kids discuss at the global roundtable?
 - a. Playing video games
 - b. Recycling to help the planet
 - c. Buying new clothes
 - d. Eating junk food

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What makes a good poster for social media?

.....

4. What was the short but powerful message the kids used?

.....

5. Name one way to help the planet that the kids shared.

.....

6. Why did the group feel proud?

.....

C. Writing
5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. My friend Ahmed lives in Alexandria but he with us at the moment.
 - a. stays
 - b. is staying
 - c. stay
 - d. staying
2. She went to work, she was very ill.
 - a. although
 - b. because
 - c. so
 - d. but

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He got up late (but) he missed the train.
2. The sun (gave) us heat and light.
3. My mom is in the kitchen. She (cook) lunch.
4. You (must) come to school late.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher is talking with his students about the Invention Fair

Teacher : Today, we'll present our inventions. Who wants to go first?

Sara : I'll go first! My ❶
is a solar-powered fan. It keeps you cool using sunlight.

Teacher : Great idea, Sara! How does it ❷

Sara : The fan has a small solar panel. When the sun shines, the fan turns on.

Ali : My invention is different. I made a pencil holder from recycled bottles.

Teacher : Good job, Ali! Why is it ❸?

Ali : It helps ❹ waste and keeps desks tidy.

Teacher : Excellent work, everyone! All your inventions are creative and helpful.

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Keeping our oceans clean"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review (B)

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

New Alamein City (n)	مدينة العلمين الجديدة	progress (n)	تقدم
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	negative (adj)	سليبي
destination (n)	وجهة/جهة الوصول	positive (adj)	إيجابي
facilities (n)	مرافق	advice (n)	نصيحة
injury (n)	إصابة	real (adj)	حقيقي
opportunities (n)	فرص	amount (n)	كمية
passion (n)	شغف	marvelous (adj)	رائع
consequences (n)	عواقب	designed (adj)	مصمم
talent (n)	موهبة	advanced (adj)	متقدم
decision (n)	قرار	urban (adj)	حضري
smart (adj)	ذكي	economy (n)	اقتصاد
tourism (n)	السياحة	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه
available (adj)	متوفر/متاح	bright (adj)	لامع
options (n)	خيارات	interests (n)	اهتمامات
focusing on (adj)	مركزا على	failure (n)	فشل
side (n)	جانب	goals (n)	أهداف
adult (n)	بالغ/راشد	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
career (n)	حياة مهنية	besides (adv)	بالإضافة إلى
absolutely (adv)	كلياً/تماماً	attract (ed)	يجذب
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض	combine (d)	يوجد
passport (n)	جواز سفر	include (d)	يشتمل على
coast (n)	ساحل	compete (d)	ينافس
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا	ignore (d)	يتجاهل
luxury (n)	رفاهية	reduce (d)	يقلل
resort (n)	منتجع	produce (d)	ينتج
international (adj)	دولي	relax (ed)	يستريح
culture center (n)	مركز ثقافي	lead to (v)	يؤدي إلى
residential areas (n)	مناطق سكنية	on your own (phr)	بمفردك
location (n)	موقع	aim to (v)	يهدف إلى
symbol (n)	رمز	do our part (phr)	نقوم بدورنا



Audioscript



SB Page (101)



استمع إلى النص

• Listen to the audio text

New Alamein is a marvelous city on the North Coast of Egypt. It's one of the first fourth-generation cities in the country, designed with advanced technology and smart urban planning. The city has a strong impact on tourism and the economy because it attracts thousands of visitors every year. New Alamein has beautiful sandy beaches, luxury resorts, international restaurants, culture centers that show Egypt's rich history. It also includes modern residential areas, business centers, and universities, which combine tourism, education, and work in one amazing place with its modern services and unique location. New Alamein can compete with the most famous cities and tourist destinations in the world. Many people consider it a symbol of progress and a bright future for Egypt.



Lesson 2 page 102 Exercise 2

Planning your future career starts with knowing your talents and interests. It's okay to try different things and learn from failure. Education and training help you build the skills you need. Besides personal goals, it's also important to be a global citizen. This means thinking about how your actions affect the world. For example, reducing plastic helps protect oceans and marine animals. Being a global citizen also means respecting others, and helping with global problems like climate change. Making smart, responsible choices now can help create a better future for everyone.

Lesson 1

1. New Alamein City is described as _____.

1. Why does New Alamein have a strong impact on tourism?

ignore - impact - injury - opportunities - passion - reduce - consequences

1. It's important to think about the _____ of your actions before you choose.

Sara had to decide between joining a beach cleanup or staying home to relax. It was a hard decision. She knew her friends were going, and they were going to post pictures online. She also wanted to be responsible and do something positive. In the end, Sara chose to join. She felt proud and even made new friends. Her small action made a big impact.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What was Sara's problem?
 a. Going shopping or reading b. Cleaning the beach or relaxing at home
 c. Posting pictures or studying d. Going to school or helping her friend
2. What influenced Sara's final choice?
 a. The weather b. Her new friends
 c. Her sense of responsibility d. A school project
3. What was the result of Sara's choice?
 a. She felt sad b. She stayed home
 c. She made no impact d. She felt proud and made friends

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why was it difficult for Sara to make a decision?

.....

5. What lesson can we learn from Sara's story?

.....

4 Write an email of (80-100) words to a friend about your dream job.

- You can include: What job you want - Why you chose it - What skills or training you'll need - Your future plans

New Message		- / X
To	:	Cc Bcc
From	:	
Subject	:	
Send		

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

impact - smart - make - negative - skill

Making decisions is an important skill we all need. To make a ① choice, we need to study the available options carefully. Focusing on the positive or ② side only, will lead to an irresponsible decision. If you can't ③ a decision on your own, ask an adult: your parents, teacher for help. Keep in your mind that every smart choice you make has an ④ on your life.

2 Complete the dialog between Maya and Samir:

Maya : I heard about the "Let's Make a Difference" project. Are you going to participate?

Samir : Yes, I am! I think it's a great opportunity to volunteer and help the community.

Maya : That's ① ! I'd love to be a part of it, too.

Samir : Absolutely! And it's important to protect endangered animals.

Maya : I agree. If we don't act now, the consequences will be negative.

Samir : You're right. We ② start now.

Maya : That's true. Every little action helps to improve the situation.

Samir : Exactly! We must all do our part.

3 Read and circle the correct word.

1. If it rains tomorrow, we (will stay / stay) indoors.
2. You (must / mustn't) forget your passport if you want to travel.
3. They (are going to visit / visit) their grandparents next month.
4. You (must / mustn't) make noise in the library.
5. What (do you do / are you doing) right now?
6. If you (study / studies) hard, you will pass the exam.

Writing a Short Biography



Choose a person who has made a significant positive impact on your life.

Write a biography of (80-100) words .You can use the following ideas:

- Their name and what they are known for.
- A brief description of their background and their passion.
- Their major achievements.
- How they encourage others or inspire change.

This image shows a full page of handwriting practice paper. It features multiple sets of horizontal dashed lines spaced evenly down the page, providing a guide for letter height and placement. The background is white, and there are no other markings or text present.

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في وحدات كتاب **Bit 20 Bit**

Unit 1

Al Azhar Exercises

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

When you go online to send messages, play video games, or check social media, it's important to remember a few simple rules that can keep you safe.

Test on Unit 1

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The internet is very important. We use it every day. It is very useful. When you are online, you should follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you have a problem, tell a parent or a teacher.

Unit 2

Al Azhar Exercises

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Eating healthy food helps your body and mind. Eat fruits, vegetables, and whole grains every day. Drink water instead of sugary drinks. Avoid too much candy or chips. Healthy snacks like nuts or yogurt give you energy. A good breakfast helps you focus at school. Small changes make a big difference. Your body will thank you!

Test on Unit 2

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Every day, I wake up at 6:30 a.m. I brush my teeth, wash my face, and get dressed. I eat breakfast with my family. At 7:30, I go to school. I study different subjects like English, Math, and Science. After school, I do my homework and help my mother. In the evening, I watch TV or read a book. I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. I like my daily routine.

Unit 3

Al Azhar Exercises

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Alaa is a kind mother. She wants her daughter to be a doctor like Dr. Gamal Hemdan. He was a geographer and a writer.

Exercises on Unit 3

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Hassan. I'm in prep one. My school life is fun and busy. Every morning, I go to school at 8:00 am. My favorite subject is history because I love reading about heroes and role models in the history. I also enjoy math and learning new things every day. Mr. Ahmed teaches us English this year. He is very kind and clever.

Unit 4**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Ramy made a decision about joining a sports competition. He thought carefully about his injury and chose to rest. It was a smart and responsible choice that helped him stay healthy.

Test on Unit 4**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Mariam planned a cheerful party for her five close friends. She wanted everyone to feel happy and comfortable. She chose fun games, good music, and made a small gift for each friend. Her plan was simple but full of care. When the party started, her friends smiled and laughed. Mariam felt proud because everything went well.

Unit 5**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My dream job is to be a doctor. I want to help sick people and make them feel better. I know the job is not easy. Sometimes doctors work long hours. To make my dream come true, I need to study hard. I also want to take a course in first aid.

Test on Unit 5**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Everyone has a dream job. It can be a doctor, a teacher, a pilot, or a chef. To get

your dream job, you need to work hard. First, you must study at school and do your homework. Good marks help you go to a good university. Second, you need to learn the right skills. For example, a doctor needs science, a teacher needs language, and a pilot needs computer and math.

Unit 6**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

At the invention fair, my project was about saving the ocean. I stood confidently by my tent, explaining clearly how reusable bottles help. My trophy was a model made from recycled items. Judges valued creative ideas that reduce danger to the environment.

Test on Unit 6**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Our group had a roundtable meeting, and the intro was about keeping our parks clean. We talked about all the trash and how we need more recycling. We made many bright posters with our own hands. Our idea for a clean park is a global one. With each person helping, we can have great success.

Bit by Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



1st
PREP
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Review on Unit 1 (Life in a Digital World)

Lessons 1 & 2

الأجهزة الرقمية	الوضع الليلي
التكنولوجيا	وقت استخدام الشاشة (الكمبيوتر / الهاتف)
عادة	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
كوكب	يبحث عن
ألعاب على الانترنت	رقمي
وقت النوم	جهاز لوحي (تابلت)
رائع / مذهل	سبورة ذكية
مفيد	حاسب محمول
بحكمة / بطريقة حكيمة	موقع إلكتروني
حافلة هجينة	كتاب إلكتروني
طاقة	رسالة
البيئة	هاتف ذكي
ينام / نوم	أنشطة خارجية
يؤثر على	تلوث
يُدشن / يُطلق	ملاحة
يتفقد / يفحص	أكثر صداقة للبيئة
يقلل	قصة مغامرات
يوازن	تطبيق (برنامج على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
يدعم / يؤيد	
يذكر	الأدوات الرقمية

Expressions & Prepositions

يشارك (شيئاً) مع (شخص) _____	يبحث عن _____
اتفق هاتفي _____	ينظر إلى _____
على اللابتوب / التابلت _____	يقوم بالواجب المدرسي _____
يساعد في _____	يأخذ استراحة _____
ماذا عنك؟ _____	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يوضح / يظهر _____	_____	_____
يتعلم _____	_____	_____
يقرأ _____	_____	_____
يرسل _____	_____	_____
يفعل _____	_____	_____
يؤذي / يؤلم _____	_____	_____

Lessons

Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about daily routine

Huda : Hi Habeeba! How do you spend your day?

Habeeba : I wake up at 7 o'clock. I ① _____ my phone
and read the messages.

Huda : What do you do every day?

Habeeba : I do my homework and watch ② _____ on my tablet.

Huda : Do you use ③ _____ devices a lot?

Habeeba : Yes, I use my laptop and my phone a lot.

Huda : That's cool! I also play ④ _____ games on my phone.

Habeeba : Try not to use it too much.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Too much _____ time can be bad for your eyes.
a. break b. bet c. free d. screen
2. I visited a science _____ to learn more about animals.
a. website b. car c. book d. story
3. Many teenagers use _____ to chat and share photos.
a. social media b. books c. emails d. radios
4. The Earth is a beautiful _____ with water and life.
a. plant b. planet c. plan d. plane
5. I read an/a _____ story about a boy who finds a magic map.
a. cooking b. comic c. tool d. adventure
6. The teacher writes notes on the _____ during the lesson.
a. smartdesk b. smartboard c. window d. mirror
7. Today, we use _____ to learn, communicate, and work faster.
a. history b. biology c. technology d. notes
8. Many students read _____ on their tablets instead of paper books.
a. e-books b. notebooks c. posters d. newspapers
9. I like to share my ideas _____ my classmates during group work.
a. in b. to c. for d. with
10. I use different _____ on my phone to learn English and play games.
a. pens b. maps c. apps d. tins

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How _____ (always) do you go to school?
2. We _____ (always are) ready.
3. Lions _____ (not) eat leaves.

4. I (never) eat pizza. I like it very much.

5. How often (do) she on time?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Mesk always plays the guitar. (every day).

2. Ali never travels to Aswan. (doesn't).

3. How often do you have English? (How many).

4. I play football. (usually).

5. I am always on time. (late).



5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. I always read books. I do this about 50% of the time. (.....)

2. How tall does Huda study English? (.....)

3. Sama read stories. (.....)

4. I always be ready. (.....)

5. I go to school everyday (.....)



Lessons 3 & 4

متحمس	ميكروفون/مكبر صوت
متشوق/متحمس/متلهف	سبورة ذكية
باب متوهج - باب مضيء	طابعة
صندوق مغلق (بقفل)	متوهج
ضوء ساطع/قوي	فأرة الكمبيوتر
ينجز/يحقق	مبتهج/مرح
يسجل	فضولي
يحل	يتعاون
ينجح	الغاز
إعلان	أداة رقمية
فصل دراسي سحري	جهاز رقمي
أدلة سحرية	لوحة مفاتيح
الغاز عائمة/طافية	سماعات
كتب لامعة	سماعة رأس
مهمة	تحدي
مكالمة فيديو	مسؤولية
عرض تقديمي	كاميرا ويب
عبر الإنترنت	خجول
جدا/فائق/للغاية	متوتر/قلق
يحذر/بعناية	مفيد
	مثير

Expressions & Prepositions

ينجز مهمة	ينقر على
يجري مكالمة فيديو	في نهاية
يسجل عرضاً تقديمياً	مستعد
يعمل إعلان	ممتلئ
يعمل كفريق	يسير عبر
يتنقل/يتحرك في (الشاشة)	راغب في

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة	
Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يصنع/يجري		
يكتب		
يجد		
يقرأ		
يشعر		
يأتي		

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 4

1

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tap - mouse - typing - keyboard - click

I always do my homework on the computer. I use the ① _____ to write my assignments. It is used for ② _____. I also use the ③ _____ to move around the screen and ④ _____ on things.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I use a _____ to join my online classes and talk to my teacher.

- a. keyboard b. printer c. webcam d. speaker

2. After finishing my project, I used the _____ to print it.

- a. printer b. scanner c. ruler d. charger

3. I wear my _____ to listen to music without disturbing others.

- a. notebook b. backpack c. microphone d. headphone

4. We had a video _____ with our teacher to talk about the school project.

- a. tall b. mall c. call d. small

5. Taking care of your homework is your _____ as a student.

- a. responsibility b. holiday c. creativity d. invitation

6. We had a _____ day at the park full of fun and surprises.

- a. boring b. magical c. normal d. rainy

7. My friend is always _____ and makes everyone smile.

- a. angry b. lazy c. cheerful d. tired

Lessons 5 & 6

ألعاب الإنترنت	كتاب إلكتروني
يتفحص	عبر الإنترنت
يرد	رقمي
يثق	يبحث عن
شاشة	موقع إلكتروني
أداة	هاتف
أخبار	رسالة
حصة تكنولوجيا المعلومات	تابلت
الروتين اليومي	سبورة ذكية
أثناء / في خلال	أحدث
	ممل

Expressions & Prepositions

يرد على	يبحث عن
أكتب ردًا	يدخل على الإنترنت
يتناول الإفطار	على التابلت

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يحصل		
يخبر		
يذهب		
يكتب		

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Social media is a good _____ to connect with friends and share ideas.
a. pin b. tin c. tool d. bike
2. Today, many students use _____ devices like tablets and laptops to study.
a. digital b. wooden c. plastic d. paper
3. I use Google to _____ for information about animals.
a. write b. play c. draw d. search
4. Before I sleep, I always _____ my messages and emails.
a. clean b. check c. close d. paint
5. We have an _____ English class every Monday using Zoom.
a. outside b. slow c. online d. local
6. I always _____ my teacher's email when she sends us homework.
a. reply to b. listen to c. read for d. talk with
7. I _____ my best friend because he always tells the truth.
a. trust b. visit c. teach d. eat
8. I watched the _____ movie in the cinema last weekend.
a. short b. late c. oldest d. latest

Test on Unit 1

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- I eat without looking at something on my screen.
a. always b. never c. usually d. often
- I often use my tablet to search for
a. books b. stories c. news d. words
- My favorite app shows me facts.
a. good b. cool c. fantastic d. interesting

B- Listen and complete:

- I want to share my day with you.
- I start my morning by my phone.
- I have four from my school friends.

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The cartoon is really ! I couldn't stop laughing.
a. funny b. quiet c. scary d. serious
- The child was very and asked many questions about space.
a. lazy b. sleepy c. curious d. quiet

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

type - paint - twice - videos - animals

At school, we use the smartboard in our science class. Our teacher shows us ① about planets and ② I love watching them! We use computers ③ a week. I am learning to ④ faster.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Two friends were travelling together, when a bear suddenly appeared before them. One of them, thinking of his own safety climbed up quickly into a tree, without trying to help his friend do the same. The other, not having time to hide, fell flat on the ground,

without moving at all, as if he were dead. The bear came up and smelled him all over, and after a while, thinking he was dead, walked away. When the danger was gone, the other traveller climbed down from the tree, and, laughing at his friend asked him:

"What did the bear whisper in your ear?"

"He gave me this advice," the other replied. "Never travel with a friend who leaves you in the lurch مأزق."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The bear the boy.
a. killed b. ate c. smelled d. helped
- The first traveller climbed up into
a. a tree b. a branch c. a wall d. a house

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the text?

.....

4. What did the second traveller do when he had no time?

.....

5. Do you think they will be friends in the future?

.....

6. What did the first traveller think of?

.....

D. Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- do you go to the cinema? Twice a month.
a. How long b. How tall c. How often d. How many
- She sleeps late.
a. doesn't b. never c. don't d. ever

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The sun (rise) in the morning.
- She (plays usually) football.
- I (never) read stories. I read them all the time.
- I (often am) active.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about school

Nora : Can I ask you some question?

Hams: ① _____, of course.

Nora : How often  _____ you go to school?

Hams: I go to school five times a **3** _____

Nora : Do you use digital **4** _____ at your school?

Hams: Yes, we use smartboards.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

“Using technology in your daily routine ”

Complete the following table:

Review on Unit 2 (Learning to learn)

Lessons ① & ②

سمعي	مرتب / منظم
حركي	كثير الالوان / زاهي الالوان
ناجح	بدني / جسدي
بانتظام	بشكل فردي
يراجع	يتذكر
يحسن / يطور	يلائم / يناسب
ينظم	طريقة
خريطة	طاقة
خريطة ذهنية	أسلوب التعلم
مخطط / رسم بياني	مشتتات الانتباه
شرح	تحديات / صعوبات
تجربة	حلول
اسلوب	الشيء الهام
شيء مرئي	شغف
جدول	شرح
ممتع	

Expressions & Prepositions

يُجري تجارب	يجلس في مقدمة
يأخذ فترات راحة قصيرة	يقوم بالأنشطة
مرتبط أو متصل بـ	يتنقل / يتحرك
في نفس الوقت	يعمل في فريق
يتجنب مشتتات الانتباه	يركز على
يبقى في حالة تركيز	في المرة الواحدة
يضع جدول للمذاكرة	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يتعلم		
يفهم		
يأخذ		
يكتب		
يسمع		

Lessons

Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to Ahmed about the way he learns best

Ali : Hi Ahmed! How do you like to learn?

Ahmed : I learn best when I see ① and colors.

Ali : So, you are a ② learner?

Ahmed : Yes! I use charts, drawings, and ③ to help me.

Ali : That's great! I learn best by listening to my teacher.

Ahmed : We all learn in ④ ways. That's okay!

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People who learn best by seeing pictures or charts are learners.
 a. auditory b. kinesthetic c. visual d. experimental
2. If you remember things better by listening, you have a/an learning style.
 a. visual b. auditory c. kinesthetic d. leadership
3. Students who learn by doing hands-on activities are learners.
 a. visual b. auditory c. kinesthetic d. communicative
4. Teachers give clear to help students understand difficult topics.
 a. experiments b. explanations c. benefits d. experiences
5. In science class, we did a/an to test if plants grow faster with sunlight.
 a. explanation b. experiment c. experience d. mind map
6. To organize my ideas for a project, I draw a
 a. mind map b. benefit c. leadership d. communication
7. The of daily exercise include better health and more energy.
 a. experiments b. explanations c. benefits d. experiences
8. A good team captain shows strong by guiding others.
 a. communication b. experience c. leadership d. experiment
9. We use phones to with friends who live far away.
 a. benefit b. communicate c. experience d. lead
10. Traveling to a new country is an exciting
 a. benefit b. communication c. leadership d. experience

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They (play) soccer in the park at the moment.
2. She is (study) for tomorrow's test.

3. Ali is (stay) at his grandparents' house this week.
4. I can (swimming) across the pool.
5. She can't (rides) a bicycle yet.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I revise my lessons every day. (right now)
2. The question is hard. I can't solve it. (easy)
3. He researches information on the internet. (now)
4. What do you do? (What are)
5. We are able to carry the boxes. (can)

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. My favorite subject is English; I can't speak it well. | (.....) |
| 2. He is sleeping yesterday. | (.....) |
| 3. She can swims very well. | (.....) |
| 4. I am learn new words at the moment. | (.....) |
| 5. They were playing football right now. | (.....) |

Lessons 3 & 4

المموح	مواظبة/مثابرة
الرياضات الجماعية	الوحدة/الاتحاد
العمل الجماعي	ملك/خاصته
وسائل الإعلام	متردد
لافتة/إشارة	واثق من نفسه
رغبة	مبدع
سمة/خاصية	خائف/مرعوب
بحرية	يطور/ينمي
سحري	يتواصل
متوهج	أسفل/تحت
مطلوب	فوائد
شُجاع	حلول
يهمس	التعاون
فورا/في الحال	القيادة
قوى	تطبيقات
غير مرئي	الأدوات الرقمية
يمر	خبرات/تجارب حياتية
يغادر	الشجاعة
	احترام - يحترم

Expressions & Prepositions

يتواصل مع	يحل المشاكل
يعتني بـ	يبحث عن حلول
لا تياس أبدا	يطور أو ينمي المهارات
فخور بـ	يكون أصدقاء جدد
على الانترنت	ياخذ نفَس عميق
يؤمن بـ	يشجع (شخصا)
يشارك الآراء	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يجد/يبحث عن		
يعلم		
يقضي		
يقول/يتحدث		
يمسك		
يغني		

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 4

1

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

experience - communicate - benefit - explanations - understand

In science class, we did an experiment about water. The teacher gave clear ① _____, and we worked in groups. We learned the benefits of good leadership and how to ② _____ with others. It was a fun ③ _____. Working together helped us ④ _____ more and enjoy learning. I like learning this way because we help each other.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sami's strong helped him finish a long race.
 a. respect b. ambition c. media d. whisper
2. It's nice to show when someone is speaking.
 a. noise b. confidence c. learning d. respect
3. I want to my drawing skills this summer.
 a. whisper b. achieve c. develop d. communicate
4. The players held hands to show their team's
 a. media b. whisper c. unity d. ambition
5. Mona felt when she stood in front of the class.
 a. confident b. required c. unity d. respect
6. Good between classmates helps finish projects quickly.
 a. ambition b. cooperation c. whisper d. media
7. Many people use social to share photos.
 a. respect b. unity c. whisper d. media
8. A helmet is for riding a bike safely.
 a. confident b. required c. whisper d. unity
9. In the library, you should when you say something to someone.
 a. shout b. laugh c. whisper d. sing
10. He worked hard every day to his dream.
 a. develop b. whisper c. lead d. achieve

Lessons 5 & 6

أخطاء	نُطق
أداء	صعب
خطة التعلم	دائرة
طرق التعلم	بالأسفل
يحسّن / يطور	مذكرة / دفتر يوميات
أفكار	مبدع
ممارسة / يمارس	رسم بياني / مخطط
يحاول / يجزّب	يسجّل
صوت	يكتشف
بوضوح	يصف

Expressions & Prepositions

يرسم مخطط	يصنع مقاطع فيديو
جاء دورك لكي	يلزم / يتمسك بـ
يمرّر (شيء) لـ	يسجل صوته
ينشئ دفتر يوميات	يقدم النصيحة لـ
على الأقل	لكي تصل لهدفك
باللغة الانجليزية	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يجلس		
يكتب		
يصنع		
يرسم		
يوصل / يستمر في		
يحدد		



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can your reading skill by practicing every day.
a. describe b. improve c. mistake d. journal
2. Sara's piano was excellent at the concert.
a. homework b. voice c. pronunciation d. performance
3. Don't be afraid to make That's how we learn.
a. cakes b. friends c. mistakes d. phones
4. I write about my day in my every night before going to bed.
a. journal b. pronunciation c. idea d. diagram
5. Your pencil is the table. Look carefully!
a. underneath b. about c. between d. in
6. The teacher drew a of the human heart.
a. song b. diagram c. dance d. joke
7. Scientists new stars with big telescopes.
a. hide b. pronounce c. improve d. discover
8. Can you your favorite toy to the class?
a. discover b. describe c. improve d. count
9. Clear helps others understand your words.
a. spelling b. pronunciation c. drawing d. running
10. The teacher asked us to share our for the project.
a. mistakes b. voices c. journals d. ideas

Test on Unit 2

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. My new English teacher is very
 a. angry b. kind c. noisy d. slow
2. Our new English teacher gives us activities.
 a. boring b. quiet c. fun d. loud
3. We play games in class.
 a. number b. word c. drawing d. running

2 B- Listen and complete:

1. She always at us.
2. I feel in her class.
3. I like English now because my teacher makes it

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After swimming lessons and a lot of practice, he felt about crossing the pool alone.
 a. scared b. confident c. lost d. cold
2. The science project succeeded because of between all group members.
 a. fighting b. silence c. cooperation d. speed

C: Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

regularly- energy - challenges - perseverance - Leadership

To be a good student, you need to study regularly. Sometimes there are ①, but you must keep going. Use your ② in a smart way. With ③, you can do hard things. ④ means helping others and showing a good example. When you work hard and stay strong, you can reach your goals and feel proud.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Working together is very important in school and life. When we help each other, we can solve problems faster. Group work teaches us to listen, share, and respect others. It also builds friendship and makes learning more fun. Good teamwork needs kind words, patience, and care. Sometimes, we may not agree, but we can talk and find a way. Cooperation makes big jobs easier. It also helps us learn leadership and how to communicate well. When we work as a team, we feel proud of what we do.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What helps us finish big jobs more easily?
a. Playing games b. Cooperation
c. Working alone d. Talking loudly
2. What is needed for good teamwork?
a. Fighting b. Silence c. Kind words d. Fast talking

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is it good to work with others?

4. What can we learn from group work?

5. How should we speak to others in a team?

6. What can teamwork help you feel?

D. Vocabulary and Structure**5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. She spent more than two months French.
a. learning b. learn c. learns d. to learn
2. A teacher should treat all students equally.
a. his b. her c. their d. its

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The teacher (explain) a very important point at the moment.
2. The nurse can (helps) you with your injury.

3. We are _____ (wait) for the teacher.

4. She _____ (can) do this quiz. It's very difficult.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Salma are talking about their studying habits

Omar : Hi Salma! How do you study at home?

Salma : Hi Omar! I like to read my notes and write them again.

What ① _____ you?

Omar : I use flashcards. They help me 2 new words.

Salma : That's a good idea! Do you study every day?

Omar : Yes, I study for one hour every night.

Salma : Great! I'll ③ _____ your way too.

Omar : Do you study in the morning or at night?

Salma : I study in the evening. It's 4 _____, and I can focus better.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

“My school teachers ”

[illegible]

Review on Unit 3 (Role Models)

Lessons ① & ②

جيش	لطيف/عطوف
أرهابي	مفعم بالمشاعر / متحمس / شغوف
للأسف/ بكل أسف	مصمم / عاقد العزم
معرفة	يلهم
عالم	يحترم
روح	قدوة / نموذج يحتذى به
رمز	إنجاز
أمل	مجتمع / جماعة
حادثة / حادث	شجاع
قوة	بطل
جندي	الفيزياء
هجوم	الاشعاع الذري
صفة / سمة	سلام / سلم
العزيمة	أمنية / رغبة
الشجاعة	سرطان (مرض)
يعتقد	علاج
يُحَسِّن	الولايات المتحدة
يموت	اختراع
يُغْجِبُ	اكتشاف
يدافع	التعاون الجماعي
	ملهم / مبدع

Expressions & Prepositions

يُجْعَلُ شَخْصًا بَطْلًا	يشارك آراء / معرفة
رمز الأمل	حول العالم
واحدة من أول	عاقد العزم في / لى
يحصل على الدكتوراه	منذ الطفولة
يعمل جيد	توفي في حادثة
	أثناء الهجوم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يُحْرَسُ		
يصنع		
يقول		
يحارب / يقاتل		
يصبح		

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Omar are talking about Ahmed El-Mansy

Ali : Who is your hero, Omar?

Omar : My hero is Ahmed El-Mansy.

Ali : What do you think ① someone a hero?

Omar : A hero helps others and protects people.

Ali : ② you describe a true hero?

Omar : Brave, strong, and kind.

Ali : What qualities ③ a hero have?

Omar : He should be honest and never afraid.

Ali : Yes! El-Mansy is a ④ hero.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed El-Mansy is a great _____ for many young people in Egypt.
a. role model b. footballer c. singer d. stranger
2. Winning the spelling competition was a big _____ for her.
a. mistake b. accident c. achievement d. question
3. He was _____ to finish his homework before dinner.
a. sleepy b. determined c. shy d. confused
4. We should always show _____ to our teachers.
a. noise b. anger c. fear d. respect
5. She is _____ about sports - she plays tennis well.
a. bored b. lazy c. passionate d. nervous
6. Books give us a lot of _____ about the world.
a. knowledge b. furniture c. water d. noise
7. Doctors work hard to find a cure for _____.
a. dancer b. cancer c. anger d. hunger
8. People in our _____ work together to keep the area clean.
a. factory b. classroom c. forest d. community

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. One day I _____ (see) a bird on a tree. It had many colors.
2. Two months _____ (last), I started playing tennis.
3. _____ (Do) you have a bike in the past?
4. I _____ (can) swim when I was young.
5. I _____ (not) happy at yesterday's party.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Abdullah isn't late for school. (yesterday)
2. Mahmoud is sleeping now. (2 hours ago)
3. Mariam did her homework. (not)
4. Mariam always helps her mom. (yesterday)
5. When does your father travel? (yesterday?)

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. Haneen reads books last year. | (.....) |
| 2. They are at the park last week. | (.....) |
| 3. Did you happy at yesterday's party? | (.....) |
| 4. Last year, my dad get a new job. | (.....) |
| 5. They doesn't go on a trip last week. | (.....) |

Lessons 3 & 4

الاحترام	جائزة رسمية
شجاعة	صندوق كنز
امانة	أعمال أدبية
مفكر	السحر الحقيقي
مضئ/ متوهج	لغز
يومئ رأسه (للموافقة)	قيمة
يبتسم إبتسامة عريضة	مشهور
مسؤولية	عميق
فضول / حب المعرفة	خاص غير عادي
العمل الجماعي	موقع جغرافي
الاصرار/ المثابرة	قائد
الطيبة / اللطف	ميدالية عليا
فضول	حامل من الكريستال
عزم / اصرار	عصا سحرية
شخص رياضي	ملئ بالفخر
جغرافي متخصص بدراسة الجغرافيا	الذكريات
كاتب	مشتملاً على
جغرافيا	يظهر
تاريخ	سحري
السياسة	يشرح
دور	يضم\ يتحد
يوعد	يكمل ، ينهي

Expressions & Prepositions

يستسلم	يفوز بالجوائز
على حامل	يحصل على درجة الدكتوراه
منذ ذلك اليوم فصاعداً	يُعرف بـ
مهتم بـ	يؤمن بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يعرف
يكتب
يفهم
يجد

Lessons

Lessons 3 - 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bear - born - geography - deep - combined

Dr. Hemdan was a famous Egyptian geographer and writer. He was ① _____ in 1928. He studied ② _____ at Cairo University. He was not only a scientist but also a ③ _____ thinker. He ④ _____ geography and politics.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A good leader must have honesty and _____ to do what is right.
a. speed b. money c. power d. honesty
- He had a big _____ on his face when he won the game.
a. grin b. tear c. frown d. shout

3. The teacher asked if we understood, and we all
 a. added b. nodded b. slept d. jumped
4. In the school play, I got the of the king.
 a. role b. rule b. story d. game
5. She got an for being the best student in the class.
 a. answer b. advice b. award d. alarm
6. A good listens to others and makes smart decisions.
 a. singer b. leader b. painter d. visitor
7. Egypt is located on the Mediterranean sea. It has a great
 a. vacation b. invitation b. station d. location
8. My brother is a great He always has smart ideas.
 a. runner b. thinker b. painter d. dancer
9. With hard work and, you can reach your goals.
 a. perseverance b. noise b. luck d. sleep
10. The soldier was a man who fought to protect his country.
 a. funny b. shy b. brave d. lazy

Lessons 5 & 6

الكلية	يصنع فارق
أمراض	أكثر صحة
طريقة/أسلوب	مصمم (عائد العزم)
مريض	متحمس/شغوف
طبيب	يعجب بـ
الألعاب الأولمبية	يلهم
زراعة عضو في الجسد	يتغلب على / يقهر
صحيح	تحديات
صعب	تكريس الوقت (اخلاص العمل)
يطور	إنجاز
يهتم بـ/يحرص على	قائد
يواجه	جماعة أو مجتمع
يتوقف	بطل
	شجاع

Expressions & Prepositions

يواجه مشاكل	يعمل بجد
يتبع الأحلام	طيب تجاه (أشخاص)
يستغرق وقتا لكي	يهتم بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يقهر		
يظهر		



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hard - hardly - kidney - hero - great

Dr. Mohammed is a famous Egyptian doctor. He is a 1 to many people. He is a 2 doctor who worked 3 to help people with 4 diseases.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eating fruits and vegetables helps you become

- a. slower b. healthier c. older d. noisier

2. Good teachers their students to do their best.

- a. punish b. forget c. inspire d. ignore

3. Helping poor people can a difference in their lives.

- a. take b. make c. play d. draw

4. Her success is the result of hard work and

- a. dedication b. vacation c. imagination d. decoration

5. With support from his family, he could his fear of speaking.

- a. come b. enjoy c. forget d. overcome

Test on Unit 3

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- Sama goes to school at _____ am.
a. 8 b. 7 c. 9 d. 10
- Sama's school life is _____.
a. fan b. fun c. fine d. file
- She is in grade 1 in a _____ school.
a. sec b. prim c. prep d. old

2 B- Listen and complete:

- She plays with my friends in the _____.
- Her favorite subject is _____.
- She loves _____ experiments.

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We all _____ Malak for working hard.
a. admire b. determine c. agree d. appear
- Patients feel better after taking the _____ regularly.
a. knowledge b. accidents c. treatment d. researches

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

always - swimming - admire - Olympics - never

Haneen is a young swimmer from Egypt. She started ① _____ when she was five. At 17, she went to the ② _____. People ③ _____ her because she works hard and ④ _____ gives up.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Robots play an important role in our life. They do different jobs. Some robots dive under water to study the sea. Others are sent inside volcanoes to study places that

are dangerous. In 2012, scientists sent a robot to another planet to study the soil and the gases there.

Also, there are personal robots which are used to do jobs at home. They are used to clean floors and cut the grass in parks and gardens. In addition, some robots have friendly faces. So, children think they are toys. These robots are very useful in hospitals. They can entertain children and help them to feel better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Robots have friendly

- a. faces b. eyes c. hands d. noses

2. The opposite of the word "personal"

- a. private b. popular c. nice d. wise

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. Do you think robots can help in hospitals? why? why not?

.....

5. What does the underlined word "Others" refer to?

.....

6. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

.....

D. Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What she do? She put the books away.

- a. do b. does c. did d. was

2. We travelled to Aswan year.

- a. last b. ago c. next d. in

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The man (be) at the park yesterday.

2. We ----- (not) play football last week.
3. Did you ----- (went) to the café?
4. Were you at school yesterday? Yes, I ----- (are).

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is asking Jana about his father's job.

Eman: What's your father's job?

Jana : He is a 1 _____

Eman: 2 does he work?

Jana : He works in a prep school.

Eman: What **3** _____ does he teach?

Jana : He 4 English.

Eman: You should be proud of him.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

"A great Egyptian thinker"

1. Introduction

2. Background

3. Methodology

4. Results

5. Conclusion

6. References

7. Appendix

8. Index

9. Glossary

10. Summary

11. Notes

12. Footnotes

13. Endnotes

14. References

15. Appendix

16. Index

17. Glossary

18. Summary

19. Notes

20. Footnotes

21. Endnotes

22. References

23. Appendix

24. Index

25. Glossary

26. Summary

27. Notes

28. Footnotes

29. Endnotes

30. References

31. Appendix

32. Index

33. Glossary

34. Summary

35. Notes

36. Footnotes

37. Endnotes

38. References

39. Appendix

40. Index

41. Glossary

42. Summary

43. Notes

44. Footnotes

45. Endnotes

46. References

47. Appendix

48. Index

49. Glossary

50. Summary

51. Notes

52. Footnotes

53. Endnotes

54. References

55. Appendix

56. Index

57. Glossary

58. Summary

59. Notes

60. Footnotes

61. Endnotes

62. References

63. Appendix

64. Index

65. Glossary

66. Summary

67. Notes

68. Footnotes

69. Endnotes

70. References

71. Appendix

72. Index

73. Glossary

74. Summary

75. Notes

76. Footnotes

77. Endnotes

78. References

79. Appendix

80. Index

81. Glossary

82. Summary

83. Notes

84. Footnotes

85. Endnotes

86. References

87. Appendix

88. Index

89. Glossary

90. Summary

91. Notes

92. Footnotes

93. Endnotes

94. References

95. Appendix

96. Index

97. Glossary

98. Summary

99. Notes

100. Footnotes

101. Endnotes

102. References

103. Appendix

104. Index

105. Glossary

106. Summary

107. Notes

108. Footnotes

109. Endnotes

110. References

111. Appendix

112. Index

113. Glossary

114. Summary

115. Notes

116. Footnotes

117. Endnotes

118. References

119. Appendix

120. Index

121. Glossary

122. Summary

123. Notes

124. Footnotes

125. Endnotes

126. References

127. Appendix

128. Index

129. Glossary

130. Summary

131. Notes

132. Footnotes

133. Endnotes

134. References

135. Appendix

136. Index

137. Glossary

138. Summary

139. Notes

140. Footnotes

141. Endnotes

142. References

143. Appendix

144. Index

145. Glossary

146. Summary

147. Notes

148. Footnotes

149. Endnotes

150. References

151. Appendix

152. Index

153. Glossary

154. Summary

155. Notes

156. Footnotes

157. Endnotes

158. References

159. Appendix

160. Index

161. Glossary

162. Summary

163. Notes

164. Footnotes

165. Endnotes

166. References

167. Appendix

168. Index

169. Glossary

170. Summary

171. Notes

172. Footnotes

173. Endnotes

174. References

175. Appendix

176. Index

177. Glossary

178. Summary

179. Notes

180. Footnotes

181. Endnotes

182. References

183. Appendix

184. Index

185. Glossary

186. Summary

187. Notes

188. Footnotes

189. Endnotes

190. References

191. Appendix

192. Index

193. Glossary

194. Summary

195. Notes

196. Footnotes

197. Endnotes

198. References

199. Appendix

200. Index

201. Glossary

202. Summary

203. Notes

204. Footnotes

205. Endnotes

206. References

207. Appendix

208. Index

209. Glossary

210. Summary

211. Notes

212. Footnotes

213. Endnotes

214. References

215. Appendix

216. Index

217. Glossary

218. Summary

219. Notes

220. Footnotes

221. Endnotes

222. References

223. Appendix

224. Index

225. Glossary

226. Summary

227. Notes

228. Footnotes

229. Endnotes

230. References

231. Appendix

232. Index

233. Glossary

234. Summary

235. Notes

236. Footnotes

237. Endnotes

238. References

239. Appendix

240. Index

241. Glossary

242. Summary

243. Notes

244. Footnotes

245. Endnotes

246. References

247. Appendix

248. Index

249. Glossary

250. Summary

251. Notes

252. Footnotes

253. Endnotes

254. References

255. Appendix

256. Index

257. Glossary

258. Summary

259. Notes

260. Footnotes

261. Endnotes

262. References

263. Appendix

264. Index

265. Glossary

266. Summary

267. Notes

268. Footnotes

269. Endnotes

270. References

271. Appendix

272

Review on Unit 4 (Smart Choices)

Lessons 1 & 2

هدف	اثر/تأثير
فائدة	مسابقة
يشارك	إصابة
يتصرف	نجاح
يشجع	مهذب
يتحسن	مقرب
يقدر/يقيم	منزعج (غير مرتاح)
عاقبة/نتيجة	مرفوض/ منبوذ
قرار	فخور
مسؤول	بحرص/ بعناية
مستبعد/ منبوذ	يحقق/ ينجز
مهمل	يتجنب
مستهتر (غير مسؤول)	سئ
إيجابي	تجربة حياتية
سلبي	يؤثر على
مازق/ مشكلة/ حيرة	يفوت
مفاجأة	

Expressions & Prepositions

يتخذ قرار	يواجه / لديه مشكلة
متحمس بشأن	يحل مشكلة
مقرب لـ	يطلب نصيحة
يشعر بأنه منبوذ	يعتني بـ
يفكر في	يتخذ قرار
يرتكب خطأ	يهدر الوقت
يؤدي إلى	يبقى بصحة/ قوياً
يركز على	يعبر الطريق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يفكر/ يعتقد		
يختار		
يسمح/ يدع		
يفهم		
يخبر		
ينسى		
يفوز		

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is sad because her friend felt left out.

Nour : My friend felt left out today.

Yasmin : You should invite her to ① your group.

Nour : ② I talk to her during break?

Yasmin : Yes, you should. That's the polite thing to do.

Nour : ③ should I do if she refuses?

Yasmin : You shouldn't give up. Try again tomorrow.

Nour : Will my actions have a positive effect?

Yasmin : ④ small actions can really help others.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the future, always think before you decide to a smart choice.

a. do

b. make

c. achieve

d. affect

Unit 4 Smart Choices

2. Mariam was of her success in the exam.
a. harmful b. left c. useful d. proud
3. means not caring about your actions.
a. Positive b. Responsible c. Careless d. Close
4. To achieve your you should train daily and work hard.
a. problem b. consequence c. goal d. benefit
5. Before you make a decision, all your options carefully.
a. evaluate b. respect c. behave d. face
6. Khaled his close friends to his birthday party.
a. encouraged b. improved c. invited d. avoided
7. Every decision you make can have positive or results.
a. good b. responsible c. negative d. useful
8. Salma felt because no one asked her to join their group project.
a. excited b. healthy c. close d. left out
9. My brother is and never skips his homework.
a. careless b. responsible c. left out d. uncomfortable
10. If you skip classes regularly, it will have like failing exams.
a. goals b. choices c. consequences d. competitions

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will Lily text you if she (miss) the bus?
2. If you don't know the answer, you (should) raise your hand.
3. When she reaches the station, she (take) the train.
4. You should (going) to the doctor if you feel sick.
5. If Ali (not finish) his project, his parents will be angry.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Listen to the coach to avoid injury. (should)
2. Eat healthy food to feel strong. (should)
3. Don't waste time on computer games. (shouldn't)
4. Study hard. (should)
5. I have a school trip so I will get up early. (If)

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. If Nawal didn't get to school early, she will skip the first lesson. (.....)
2. We should be careless when we cross the road. (.....)
3. If you eat less sugar, you will being healthy and strong. (.....)

Lessons 3 & 4

معرض/عادل	عواقب
نزاهة/أمانة	مدرب
صادق	حادثة
حكم/تقييم	مبهج
صديق للبيئة	دور
يصيب/يلحق الأذى/إصابة	تدفق الماء
يتعافى/يشفى	يفوت
يبتكر/ينشئ	يهم
يتجاهل	يفشل
لاعب رياضي	الصدقة
حكيم	اختراع
سباق	سنوى
تدريب	آلة توفير الماء
خطر	ميدالية
مهارات حل المشكلات	يخترع
تأثير	يصمم
قرار	قيادة/مقدمة/يقود
مشكلة	يستسلم

Expressions & Prepositions

يطلب المساعدة	في مساري نحو
يخطر	له تأثير كبير على
يشارك في	يتولى القيادة
يقرر/يحسم قراره	يمنح الفرصة
يعطي نصيحة	خطوة بخطوة
لديه مبادئ أخلاقية	يعطي اهتمامًا
	له دور

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يجري		
يبني		
يستمر		

Lessons

Lessons 3 - 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

have - curiosity - take - eco-friendly - fair

Shaza designed a water-saving machine for her village. She used ① _____ materials and pipes to help water flow. Some people refused to help, but she didn't give up. Her ② _____ and training helped her create it. At the annual ③ _____, everyone agreed it was great. Shaza's influence made others ④ _____ part in saving water.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word means being honest and have strong moral principles.
a. judgment b. determination c. honesty d. curiosity
2. His wise advice had a positive on my decision-making skills.
a. impact b. injury c. honesty d. training
3. Don't be afraid to take a if you believe in your idea.
a. consequence b. risk c. determination d. influence
4. The athlete's helped him recover quickly from his injury.
a. judgment b. determination c. honesty d. risk
5. She prepared well for her job to become a coach.
a. model b. medal c. interview d. invention
6. I'll the lead and start the project.
a. make b. do c. get d. take
7. Nada's smart won a prize at the annual fair.
a. honesty b. metal c. invention d. risk

Lessons 5 & 6

بشكل فعال/ بكفاءة	يُحفظ
قلق	مدونة/ منشور
متوتر مضغوط	العمل/ الواجبات المدرسية
وقت الفراغ	ما إذا
هواية	لاحقًا
يستكشف	مشروع
يستلم	

Expressions & Prepositions

متوتر بشأن	يقترّب
ينتهي به الأمر بـ	يستعد
طلب النصّح	يهدر الوقت
	اسداء النصّح

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يقضى

يترك

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara was _____ when the machine didn't work at first.
 a. cheerful b. organized c. worried d. hopeful
2. Do you have a _____ like drawing or sports?
 a. free time b. work time c. hobby d. project
3. Don't be nervous _____ the test-just do your best.
 a. for b. with c. about d. of
4. How much time did you _____ building your model?
 a. save b. receive c. explore d. spend
5. My friend's water-saving _____ won first prize.
 a. hobby b. project c. free time d. meeting
6. If you plan your time _____ you can finish faster.
 a. effectively b. carelessly c. foolishly d. quickly
7. Let's _____ different ways to solve this problem together.
 a. explore b. receive c. spend d. rest
8. Too much homework makes many students feel _____ and tired.
 a. cheerful b. organized c. stressed d. hopeful

Test on Unit 4

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. Salma likes to _____ in her free time.
 a. play sports b. read books c. create things d. watch TV
2. She feels _____ while working.
 a. stressed b. happy c. bored d. angry
3. Salma's favorite hobby is _____.
 a. drawing pictures c. making paper models
 b. cooking food d. collecting coins

B- Listen and complete:

4. She uses _____ materials and works carefully.
5. Her models look _____.
6. Salma wants to take part in the annual _____.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to think about the _____ of your actions before you choose.
 a. consequences b. goals c. choices d. competitions
2. He received an _____ while playing football yesterday.
 a. impact b. influence c. injury d. invention

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

In - role - training - At - coach

Omar joined his school's football team last month. ① _____ first, he was nervous about playing with others. But during ② _____ he learned the value of teamwork. His ③ _____ said, "Win or lose, we play together." Omar started to enjoy each game. He made new friends and felt proud to have a ④ _____ in the team's success.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Laila is a responsible and organized student. She enjoys learning and helping others. One day, she had an idea to design a study app for students who feel stressed about tests. She wanted to make learning easier and more fun. After finishing her schoolwork, Laila spent her free time working on the project. The app gave tips, short quizzes, and reminders to study for tests. Sometimes Laila felt tired, but she didn't **give up**. Her sister helped her check the app. At the annual fair, many students loved the app. The judges said **it** was a smart and useful invention. Laila received a medal and felt proud. Her project had a great impact on her schoolmates.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- While working on the project, Laila sometimes felt
a. proud b. stressed c. responsible d. tired
- The verb "**give up**" means
a. continue b. go on c. stop d. try

B. Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title for the passage.
.....

- Who helped Laila check the app?
.....

- What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?
.....

- What do you think of Laila's app?
.....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- What will the coach say if we practice?
a. missed b. missing c. misses d. miss
- Asmaa rest because she looks tired.
a. should b. shouldn't c. won't d. mustn't

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mayar (win) the race if she practices every day.
2. Students (shouldn't) review their lessons before the test.
3. If Omar (not arrive) on time, we'll start without him.
4. What should Eman (did) to improve her English?

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is preparing for the annual fair.

Mona : Are you ready for the annual fair, Salma?

Salma : Almost! I'm working on my invention. It's a ① of an eco-friendly house.

Mona : That's great! ② you design it yourself?

Salma : Yes, but my brother helped me fix some parts.

Mona : I'm ③ to see it.

Salma : What ④ I do before the big day?

Mona : You should have some rest.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

"A problem you faced"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 5 (Future Dreams)

Lessons 1 & 2

جيولوجيا	مستقبل مشرق
الكيمياء	يخطط \ خطة
مهمة أبولو [رحلة الي الفضاء]	يكتشف
	ينجح
مواقع الهبوط	يطور
إعلان	رسب/يفشل
ورشة عمل	طموح
قاعدة	فرص
واقع/واقعية	مصمّمون
عالم	مسار في الحياة
رائد فضاء	شغف
طب	مهنة
يُنشئ	موهبة
يتخرج	جهد
يُحقّق	مصمم جرافيك (رسومات)
يتواصل	ثقة
يصمم	المسار المهني
طبيعي	

Expressions & Prepositions

يُحقق الأهداف	ورشة عمل مهنية
يحدد هدف	يصل إلى هدف
يتأخذ خطوه	يؤمن بـ
يصمم موقع	يتمني ان
سعيد بمقابلتك	يشارك في
ينتهز الفرصة	تطمح الي
عمل شاق	يخطط / يحتاج / يجهز لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
ينسى		
يجد		
يصبح		
يعطي		
يختار		
يحدد		

Lessons

Lessons 1 - 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about their dream jobs

Nour : Hi Karim! What's your dream job?

Karim : I want to be ①

Nour : Really! Why do you want to be an engineer?

Karim : Because I like building things and solving problems.

Nour : That sounds cool. ② ?

Karim : Yes, they are my favorite subjects. What about you?

Nour : I want to be a teacher.

Karim : A teacher? That's nice! ③ ----- ?

Nour : Because I love helping people learn new things.

Karim : You would be a great teacher, Nour.

Nour : ④ ----- ! I hope I can study at a good university.

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He works hard because his ----- is to be a doctor.
a. goal b. job c. rule d. gift
2. She wants to ----- her skills in drawing.
a. break b. develop c. lose d. read
3. My brother has a great ----- for music.
a. talent b. reality c. phone d. game
4. He has a strong ----- to become a famous writer .
a. ambition b. station c. vacation d. pencil
5. She wants to work in fashion. She loves what ----- do.
a. cooks b. singers c. teachers d. designers
6. There are many new job ----- in this company.
a. talents b. opportunities c. professions d. careers
7. She is making a ----- to study abroad.
a. passion b. profession c. plan d. party
8. He wants to ----- new hobbies during summer.
a. explore b. invent c. stay d. believe
9. She shows great ----- for cooking.
a. designer b. passion c. workshop d. medicine
10. He is on the right ----- to become a football player.
a. bath b. path c. bathe d. pass

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (going) to be a doctor one day.
2. She (are) going to study engineering.
3. (Do) we going to look for a summer job?
4. He is going (be) a great teacher.
5. My friend is (go) to open her own shop.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I'm visiting my grandmother. (visit)
2. They study medicine. (next year)
3. We will travel to Luxor. (going)
4. He eats pizza for dinner. (tomorrow)
5. I watch a movie. (tonight)

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. Look at the clouds! It will rain soon. (.....)
2. They not going to do their homework. (.....)
3. Are you going to plays football? (.....)
4. He going to watch a movie. (.....)
5. We is going to visit the zoo. (.....)

Lessons 3 & 4

مسار/ممر/طريق	خجول
مثالي	فريد/مميز
صداقة	مهارة
جائزة	يتمنى
بانتظام	جامعة
بدلاً من ذلك	تحريب
يلادظ	تعليم
يمدح	عدل/إنصاف
يُنقذ	نجاح
يناسب/يلائمه	يحقق/ينجز
يوميء بالموافقة	ألة لتوفير المياه
يلوهم	مياه المطر
يصلح	هدف \ غرض
بشكل مثالي	مهمة

Expressions & Prepositions

يشعر بتحسّن	تابع من القلب/بصدق وإحساس
يكتسب المهارات	فخور بـ
يفقد الأمل	يشعر بالتعب من
ارتكب خطأ	يعتني بـ
يفكر في	يأمل فـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يفكر		
يعرف		
يشعر		
يبني		

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

training - talent - university - skills - fairness

My sister wants to go to ① because she believes education is important. She is taking a ② course to improve her computer ③ She has a special ④ for design and a unique style.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He is very He doesn't like speaking in front of the class.
a. shy b. loud c. funny d. angry
- She sings Her voice is beautiful.
a. slowly b. loudly c. perfectly d. badly
- I to visit Paris one day.
a. achieve b. wish c. wash d. show
- If you study hard, you can your goals.
a. lose b. forget c. achieve d. listen
- Getting a good job is a kind of
a. food b. place c. success d. mistake
- Her is to be a doctor and help people.
a. energy b. profession c. aspiration d. friendship
- He showed when he helped the sad child.
a. fun b. energy c. empathy d. power

Lessons 5 & 6

الهندسة	يعالج او يعامل
يشارك	خطة \ يخطط
يتبع	مهارة
الجانب السلبي	طموح
يعتني بـ	موهبة
طبيب بيطري	ينجح
مالك	مفضل
مبدع	خاص
استعد	يضم
خريطة ذهنية	

Expressions & Prepositions

من المهم ان	في رأيي
تضع خطة	إعداد خريطة ذهنية
تذهب إلى الفراش	يستمتع بـ
يصمم مباني	لديه موهبة في

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يحتفظ		
يكتب		
يرى		
يجلس		
يقرا		



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Her dance was amazing. Everyone clapped.
a. instruction b. ambition c. performance d. prediction
2. The cat is hiding the table.
a. next b. on c. underneath d. between
3. He is very He loves making new art and stories.
a. lazy b. creative c. tired d. quiet
4. My brother has a strong to be a football player.
a. ambition b. message c. branch d. instruction
5. Please read the before you start the test.
a. instructions b. ambitions c. performances d. predictions
6. The tree has many with green leaves.
a. talents b. instructions c. branches d. roots
7. The weather say it will rain tomorrow.
a. games b. predictions c. answers d. lessons
8. She has a talent painting. She draws beautiful pictures.
a. for b. at c. of d. to

Test on Unit 5

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. The speaker's dream job is to be a
 a. Teacher b. Doctor b. Artist b. Farmer
2. Doctors give to patients.
 a. food b. games b. medicine b. water
3. To become a doctor, the speaker needs to get good
 a. grades b. sports b. sleep b. advice

2 B- Listen and complete:

4. My dream job is to be a
5. I want to go to and learn about the human body.
6. My parents always me.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Teaching is not just a job. It is a
 a. profession b. performance c. hobby d. subject
2. She is very She always has new ideas for art and writing.
 a. creative b. sleepy c. loud d. careful

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

map - education - effort - designer - fairness

Some people want to be designers. They need to have good ① and strong skills in art and computers. To become a good ②, you must work hard and make a lot of ③ In class, we made a mind ④ to show what a designer needs. I think being a designer is a great job for people who are creative and kind.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Everyone has a dream in life. Some people dream of becoming doctors, teachers, designers, or even pilots. Dreams are important because they give us hope and something to work for. But how can you achieve your dream? First, you need to believe in yourself. Say, "I can do it!" every day. Then, you must work hard. Success does not come easily. You need to study, practice, and keep learning. Education is very important because it gives you the skills and knowledge to follow your dream.

Next, make a plan. Start with small steps. Set a goal for each week or month. Use a mind map or a notebook to write down your ideas and track your progress. If you face problems, don't give up. Keep going and ask for help when you need it. Finally, always be kind and fair. Work well with others and show respect. With effort, support, and a strong plan, you can turn your dream into reality.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Education gives you the _____ to follow your dream.
a. desire b. skills c. talent d. instructions
- You must work _____ to reach your goal.
a. late b. fast c. hard d. hardly

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why are dreams important?

4. What can you use to write down your ideas and goals?

5. What should you do if you face a problem?

6. What are two things that help you achieve your dream?

D. Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Are you going to _____ medicine?
a. studies b. studies c. study d. studying
- We are _____ going to become designers.
a. go b. goes c. going d. to go

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are going to (join to) a career workshop.
2. (Do) you going to travel?
3. They is going to (been) famous engineer.
4. She is going to (taking) a course in photography.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

An interviewer is interviewing a famous doctor.

- Interviewer** : Hello, Dr. Hassan. Welcome!
- Dr. Hassan** : Hello! Thank you. I'm happy to be here.
- Interviewer** : Why did you become a doctor?
- Dr. Hassan** : ①
- Interviewer** : ② ?
- Dr. Hassan** : Yes, I enjoy it a lot. I like helping sick people feel better.
- Interviewer** : Is your job easy?
- Dr. Hassan** : ③ I work many hours.
- Interviewer** : ④ ?
- Dr. Hassan** : They need to study hard.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

"Important skills for your job dream"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 6 (Global citizen)

Lessons 1 & 2

يحل	كهرباء
يضيع	الطبيعة
يتبع	رعاية
يصدق/يعتقد	مجتمع
ينقذ	تقاليد
يتطوع	لغة
زبالة / قمامة	مواطنة
مواطن عالمي	يساهم
غير عادل	قفازات
قاعدة	تأثير/انطباع
ثقافة	يلهم
قانون	العدل
امن	قائد
كوكب	يلتحق
سلام	يحسن
يحترمه	يشجع

Expressions & Prepositions

في احتياج	يبدو ممتع
يظهر الاحترام	يلحق القطار
بغض النظر	عطوف على
يفكر بشأن	يكون من
يحدث فارق كبير	يقوم بخيارات جيدة
يتشارك مع	مسموح له ان
يهتم بـ	يشعر بالسوء
فهمت	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يحفظ		
يرمي		
يفوز		
يمسك/يلحق		

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Everyone should be treated with
 a. unfairness b. justice c. sadness d. hunger
- Please put your in the bin.
 a. treasure b. food c. rubbish d. clothes
- The park is a great place for to play.
 a. adults b. children c. cars d. books
- The ball rolled across the
 a. sky b. ground c. table d. wall
- Our class is working on a special about space.
 a. song b. game c. project d. nap

6. It's important to _____ for your pets.
 a. ignore b. care c. forget d. hide
7. We all live in the same _____.
 a. desert b. community c. island d. mountain
8. A good _____ helps guide the team.
 a. follower b. leader c. painter d. singer
9. People speak many _____ languages around the world.
 a. same b. different c. loud d. quiet
10. Please help me _____ the room.
 a. dirty b. clean c. break d. fill
11. What _____ do you speak at home?
 a. food b. language c. game d. color
12. We need to _____ all the toys.
 a. throw b. lose c. collect d. hide
13. Let's work _____ to finish the task.
 a. alone b. together c. slowly d. quickly
14. I want to _____ my grandparents this weekend.
 a. leave b. visit c. miss d. forget

Language

15. We _____ throw trash on the beach.
 a. mustn't b. must c. can't d. aren't
16. You _____ brush your teeth every morning.
 a. mustn't b. must c. don't d. won't
17. Students _____ listen to their teacher in class.
 a. must b. mustn't c. isn't d. weren't
18. You _____ touch a hot stove. It's dangerous!
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. didn't
19. We _____ recycle plastic bottles to help the planet.
 a. mustn't b. must c. couldn't d. doesn't
20. You _____ shout in the library. Be quiet!
 a. must b. mustn't c. can d. aren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She usually (eat) breakfast at 7 AM.
2. Look! The boys (play) football now.
3. Yesterday, I (watch) a funny movie.
4. Every morning, Sarah (brush) her teeth.
5. Right now, the teacher (write) on the board.
6. You (mustn't) look both ways before crossing the street.
7. Students (must) talk during the exam.
8. We (mustn't) wash our hands before eating.
9. Children (can) touch the hot stove.
10. You (mustn't) wear a seatbelt in the car.
11. They (mustn't) feed the animals at the zoo.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hard - change - improve - waste - respect

We can ① the world by sharing what we have. Many people lack food, clothes, and education. Donating or volunteering can ② lives. We must also ③ everyone, no matter where they come from. Learning new things and working ④ helps us grow. If we stay honest and fair, the world will be a happier place.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We can improve our world by being kind to others. Small acts of love, like helping a neighbor or smiling at someone, make a big difference. We should also take care of nature by planting trees and reducing waste. Recycling and using less plastic keeps the Earth clean. If everyone does a little, together we can do a lot. Teaching children good values will help build a better future. The world becomes beautiful when we work together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How can we take care of nature?
 - a. By wasting more plastic
 - b. By planting trees and reducing waste
 - c. By ignoring pollution
 - d. By helping a neighbor.

2. What happens when everyone helps a little?

- a. Nothing changes
- b. Together, we can do a lot
- c. Only a few people benefit
- d. The world becomes worse.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What are some small acts of kindness you can do every day?

4. Why is it important to teach children good values?

5. How does recycling help the Earth?

6. What can you do to reduce waste in your home?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. It's necessary to be kind to others. (must)
2. It's necessary not to waste much water. (mustn't)
3. Marwa always reads books. (at the moment)
4. She is drawing a picture now. (every day)
5. Smoking is not allowed in the hospital. (mustn't)

6 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

1. Tomorrow, I was at the cinema. (-----)
2. Fares go to the market and bought fish. (-----)
3. They must play football in the street. (-----)

Lessons 3 & 4

عناصر	كاس
عالم	جودة
معرض الاختراعات	يشارك
ملون	يمثل/يتصرف
اثارة	يقلل
بوضوح	يوصل
بثقة	يعتمد
غرض	يخترع
متاثر	مسؤولية
شجاعة	محيط
جائزة	بيئة
بفخر	تأثير
ذو معنى	يمكن إعادة استخدامه
منافسة	تنوع
فضولي	عمليات التنظيف
تعاون	أجيال
اتحاد	مخلوق
يسلي	قاضي
يومئ برأسه	قيمة

Expressions & Prepositions

ليس فقط لكن أيضا	في خطر
يشعر بالحزن	حول العالم
يحمل هذه القيم الى المستقبل	يشارك في
	اجمالا / على العموم
انه واجبنا أن	يعتمد على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يفادر		
يعرض		
يشعر		
يصبح		

Lessons



Lessons 3 - 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We have a to keep our oceans clean.
a. danger b. responsibility c. trophy d. though
- Plastic bags can hurt sea
a. creatures b. clean-ups c. generations d. teamwork
- Recycling has a good on our environment.
a. impact b. prize c. nodded d. real
- My sister her water bottle every day.
a. entertains b. fills c. smiles d. though
- The children when they saw the funny clown.
a. presented b. nodded c. smiled d. slept

6. Our class won first _____ in the recycling competition.
 a. danger b. prize c. diversity d. meaningful
7. The judge _____ when he liked the project.
 a. filled b. nodded c. entertained d. thought
8. We should use _____ shopping bags.
 a. reusable b. proud c. real d. teamwork
9. The whole school _____ during the awards ceremony.
 a. presented b. clapped c. entertained d. filled
10. Our team showed great _____ in the beach clean-up.
 a. danger b. noise c. teamwork d. generations

Language

11. She wanted to play outside, _____ it was raining.
 a. because b. so c. but d. although
12. Tom studied hard _____ he wanted to pass the test.
 a. because b. so c. but d. although
13. The cake looked delicious, _____ I didn't eat any.
 a. because b. so c. but d. although
14. It was cold outside, _____ we wore our jackets.
 a. because b. so c. but d. although
15. _____ the movie was long, we enjoyed it.
 a. Because b. So c. But d. Although
16. I was tired, _____ I went to bed early.
 a. because b. so c. but d. although
17. The dog barked loudly _____ it saw a cat.
 a. because b. so c. but d. although

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

creativity - ideas - invention - proud - full

The day of the Invention Fair was ① of excitement! Kids showed off their amazing ② A small boy had a robot that could water plants. A group of friends made a backpack with a built-in phone charger. Judges walked around, asking questions about each ③ Everyone was ④ to share their hard work. It was a day to celebrate creativity and new ideas.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our school recently had an exciting Invention Fair where students showed creative projects. I presented my idea to reduce plastic waste by making reusable shopping bags from old T-shirts. The hall was filled with colorful displays, and everyone explained their projects clearly. Judges were impressed by our new solutions to everyday problems. My friend won a trophy for his solar-powered toy car. The fair taught us that small ideas can make a big difference. It was fun seeing how creativity can help the environment!.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did the student make at the Invention Fair?
 - a. A plastic toy
 - b. Reusable bags from old T-shirts
 - c. A new computer
 - d. A glass bottle
2. What did the friend win a trophy for?
 - a. A solar-powered toy car
 - b. The best drawing
 - c. A science test
 - d. A running race

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why was the Invention Fair exciting?

.....

4. How can old T-shirts help the environment?

.....

5. What did the judges think of the students' projects?

.....

6. What lesson did the fair teach the students?

.....

Lessons 5 & 6

اسم المستخدم	عالمي
كوكب	رمز تعبيري
مائدة مستديرة	شعار
مقدمة	كل
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	نجاح
منشور	فكرة
جذاب	دائرة
انتباه	يحب
محترم للآخرين	يمرر/يناول
قمامة	يخطط
ملصقات	يصمم
اعادة التدوير	

Expressions & Prepositions

يتولى المسؤولية	يجذب الانتباه
يشعر بالفخر أن	يتوقف عن القاء القمامة
يحدث فارق كبير	يضيف متعة
الناس ذوي الحاجة	يهتم بـ
يشعر بالانتماء	ما يجب فعله و ما لا يجب فعله
على الأقل	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

ياخذ		
يشعر		
يحفظ		



1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. What was the room filled with at the Invention Fair?
 - a. Silence
 - b. Energy
 - c. Darkness
 - d. Happiness
2. What could the special jacket do?
 - a. Play music
 - b. Change colors
 - c. Fly
 - d. Sing
3. Who was impressed by the students' inventions?
 - a. Only the teachers
 - b. Only the parents
 - c. Parents and teachers
 - d. No one

B- Listen and complete:

1. "Tables were lined up with all kinds of cool"
2. "Another student created a device to help you find lost"
3. "The air was filled with chat and"

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She help her friend.
 - a. was sad to
 - b. was scared to
 - c. felt proud to
 - d. was angry to
2. Your small help can a big difference to someone's life.
 - a. have
 - b. cause
 - c. make
 - d. do
3. We should always help people in our community.
 - a. at need
 - b. for need
 - c. in need
 - d. on need
4. We want everyone to feel in our group.
 - a. alone
 - b. excluded
 - c. included
 - d. lost
5. The cat is sleeping the bed.
 - a. between
 - b. next
 - c. underneath
 - d. inside

6. I picked _____ the fallen leaves in the garden.
a. over b. down c. up d. in
7. You should drink at _____ eight glasses of water every day.
a. last b. less c. least d. lost
8. The song has a very _____ tune, I can't stop singing it!
a. sad b. long c. catchy d. quiet
9. After hard work, we hope to have _____ in our project.
a. problems b. failure c. success d. delays
10. The cat is hiding _____ the table.
a. on top of b. next to c. underneath d. beside
11. Please _____ making so much noise.
a. start b. continue c. Stop d. keep

3 Complete the following dialogue:

A student is talking to his teacher

Student : Hi! What should a global citizen do?

Teacher : A global citizen should be ① _____ to everyone.

Student : And what shouldn't they do?

Teacher : They shouldn't be mean to people from other ② _____

Student : Should they help others?

Teacher : Yes, they should always ③ _____ people in need.

Student : What about waste?

Teacher : They shouldn't ④ _____ food or water.

Student : Good points!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On social media, a group posted a challenge: "Recycle one thing each day!" Their catchy posters used the recycling symbol and happy emojis. The intro said, "Our planet needs help-join us!" At a school roundtable, kids shared ideas. One said, "Bring your own bag to the store." Another added, "Use both sides of paper." The circle grew as

more users joined. They kept their posts respectful and fun. Soon, their small idea became a global success. Even picking up trash made a difference. Every action counts-what will you do today?

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did the group post on social media?
 - a. A cooking challenge
 - b. A recycling challenge
 - c. A singing contest
 - d. A shopping game
2. What did the kids talk about at the school roundtable?
 - a. Video games
 - b. Recycling ideas
 - c. Favorite movies
 - d. Sports

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What emojis did the posters use?

4. Why is recycling important for the planet?

5. Name one way you can help the Earth.

6. How did the group make their posts fun and respectful?

Test on Unit 6

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. What did the class do last Saturday?

a. Went shopping

b. Joined a beach clean-up

c. Played football

d. Watched a movie

2. Why did they pick up trash?

a. To protect sea creatures

b. To find treasure

c. To make a fire

d. To build a sandcastle

3. How did the teacher react?

a. Nodded and smiled

b. Shouted angrily

c. Cried

d. Ran away!

B- Listen and complete:

1. We used _____ bags to collect trash.

2. The judge gave us a _____ for our hard work.

3. Small actions make a real _____!

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Would you like to _____ our club?

a. leave

b. join

c. break

d. finish

2. We like to play _____ games in the park.

a. boring

b. difficult

c. fun

d. hard

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

impacts - responsibility - purpose - diversity - reusable

Our ocean is home to many creatures. It is our ① _____ to keep it clean. Trash on the beach puts sea life in danger. We can help by using ② _____ items and joining clean-ups. Scientists say pollution ③ _____ the whole environment. If we act now, future generations will enjoy the ocean's ④ _____

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The oceans are home to many fish and plants. But trash and plastic hurt them. How can we protect the oceans? First, we should recycle bottles and bags. Second, we must not throw trash on beaches. Third, we can join clean-up days to pick up litter. Many posters remind people to care for the sea. A catchy slogan like "Save the Fish!" helps spread the idea. Even small actions, like using less plastic, make a big difference. If everyone helps, the oceans will stay clean and full of life. What will you do today?

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is one way to protect the oceans?
 - Throw trash on the beach
 - Recycle bottles and bags
 - Use more plastic
 - Ignore posters
- What do catchy slogans like "Save the Fish!" do?
 - Make people laugh
 - Help spread the idea of protecting oceans
 - Tell people to buy more fish
 - Teach math

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why is plastic bad for the ocean?

- What can you do to help keep beaches clean?

- How do posters help protect the oceans?

- What small action can you start today to help sea life?

D. Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Sarah likes apples, ----- she doesn't like oranges.
 - because
 - so
 - but
 - although
- We ----- wash our hands before eating.
 - mustn't
 - must
 - don't
 - won't

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He was happy (so) he passed the exam.
2. We (might) be quiet in the library.
3. You (will) use your phone while driving.
4. Look, it (rain) outside.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

A girl is talking to her Mom

Girl : Mom, how can I be a good citizen?

Mom : Start at home ① your room and help with the housework.

Girl : What about outside?

Mom : Recycle, don't ② and respect nature.

Girl : Should I ③ with friends?

Mom : Yes! Sharing shows you care about others.

Girl : What if I see someone sad?

Mom : A good citizen tries to cheer them up.

Girl : Is voting important too?

Mom : When you're older, yes! It helps the ④

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

"About how to be a good citizen "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Tests on the First Term

امتحانات عامة على الفصل الدراسي الأول

Test 1

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. Huda wakes up.....
a. late b. lately c. early d. fairly
2. She is interested in.....
a. reading b. writing c. speaking d. listening
3. She dreams of writing her own.....
a. notebook b. booklet c. book d. letter

B: Listen and complete:

1. She enjoys a breakfast.
2. Huda is my friend.
3. She goes to the public library.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Her dream of becoming a doctor shows her strong.....
a. emotion b. vacation c. ambition d. confusion
2. The team was happy to win the football.....
a. trophy b. ticket c. lesson d. backpack

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

success - farmer - international - champion - support

Retal trains every day. She has won many national and ① medals. She dreams of becoming a world ② and hopes to open a swimming school in Egypt. Her family and trainers ③ her journey. She says: believing in yourself is the first step to ④

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amr. My family is a happy small one. My father goes to work by bus. He doesn't usually take the train because it arrives late. My mother doesn't work. She is very busy looking after our tiny house as well as my little baby sister. Although we are not rich, we live a fairly quiet comfortable life. On Fridays, I help my brother who sells vegetables using a small cart. My friends have a lot of toys with which we play. We spend most of our time running and playing in the garden. I study my lessons and do my homework with my friends who are very helpful. Next year, I will join the secondary school in my town and be one of the top students.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "tiny" means
 a. very big b. very small c. very old d. very far
- Amr is a student in
 a. primary school b. prep school
 c. secondary school d. kindergarten

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?

- What does Amr's brother do?

- Why doesn't Amr's mother work?

- How does Amr and his friends spend most of their time?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you study hard, you the test.
 a. pass b. would pass c. will pass d. passed
- What should I to stay healthy?
 a. do b. did c. does d. doing

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He _____ (going) to watch a movie tonight.
2. We _____ (mustn't) be kind to each other every day.
3. _____ (Did) you ready yesterday?
4. Look at the clouds! It _____ (will) rain.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Omar about what he did yesterday.

Ali : Hi, How are you?

Omar : I am ① _____

Ali : 2 did you go yesterday?

Omar : I went to the park.

Ali : 3 did you go there?

Omar : I went there by bus.

Ali : What did you do there?

Omar : I  _____ with my friends.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

“Being a Global Citizen”

[Faint handwriting practice lines visible through the paper.]

Test 2

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. Omar always thinks about his future.....
 a. dear b. deer c. career d. dream
2. He wants to be.....
 a. sad b. happy c. angry d. thirsty
3. He is..... years old.
 a. 10 b. 12 c. 20 d. 11

B: Listen and complete:

1. He loves helping.....
2. He wants to become a..... one day.
3. He will go to..... to study medicine.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You need good computer..... to do this job.
 a. books b. games c. chairs d. skills
2. To..... means to make or invent something new.
 a. give up b. create c. ignore d. eat

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

injury - after - risk - impact - part in

Last summer, I had to make a big decision. I wanted to take ① a competition. I asked my father's advice which had a great ② on my decision. Before I started training, I had a bad ③ I couldn't take a ④ and play but I got a rest.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ants are found everywhere in the world. They make their home in buildings, gardens, etc. They live in anthills. Ants are very hardworking insects. Throughout the summer, they collect food for the winter season. Whenever they find a sweet lying on the floor, they stick to the sweet and carry it to their home. Thus, in this way, they clean the floor. Ants are generally red and black in colour. They have two eyes and six legs. They are social insects. They live in groups or colonies. Most ants are scavengers. They collect whatever food they can find. They are usually wingless but they develop wings when they reproduce. Their bites are quite painful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ants are _____ in colour.
- a. red b. black
- c. red and black d. white
2. Ants are _____ insects.
- a. lazy b. hardworking c. huge d. noisy

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where are ants found?

4. Why do ants collect food in summer?

5. How do ants clean the floor?

6. What is the main idea of the passage?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What _____ you do last Friday?
a. do b. does c. did d. can
2. I _____ short stories at the moment.
a. read b. reading c. am read d. am reading

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3. I (could) answer the question because it's difficult.
4. You should (studies) hard.
5. We (buy) a car next month.
6. My uncle (live) in the USA.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam is asking Nadi about his hobby

Adam : What is your favorite hobby?

Nadi : I like playing ①

Adam : ② do you play it?

Nadi : I play tennis in the club.

Adam : ③ do you go there?

Nadi : I go there by car.

Adam : with whom do you play?

Nadi : I play with ④

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Plans for future Job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 3

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- Rules can keep you _____.
a. safe b. happy c. angry d. sad
- _____ tell your parents about social media.
a. Often b. Always c. Never d. Ever
- Don't _____ on any links you don't know.
a. clock b. open c. click d. make

B: Listen and complete:

- Never share _____ information with anyone.
- When you check social media, remember simple _____.
- Don't use _____ that you don't know.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We mustn't be unkind or _____ to others.
a. good b. nice c. unfair d. kind
- Every child has the right to get a good _____.
a. education b. vacation c. location d. information

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

concert - invited - careless - responsible - party

Youssef was excited about his birthday. He planned a small ① _____ after school. He ② _____ eight close friends who had been ③ _____ in class and finished their homework. Two classmates asked to join. They weren't very close to Youssef and one had been ④ _____ in class.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water means life. It is very important in our life. We need it for drinking, washing, cooking, watering fields and getting electricity. We should use it carefully. Careless people use it badly. Some of them use too much water to wash their cars. Others leave the taps open day and night.

Children need to know how and when to use water carefully. Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water can help us turn the desert into green land. Nowadays, modern ways of watering plants save much water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We should teach our children to be about water.
a. careful b. useless c. careless d. afraid
- Modern ways of watering much water.
a. waste b. lose c. save d. use

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?

.....

- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

.....

- What do we need water for?

.....

- What do careless people use water?

.....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you study hard, you won't pass the test.
a. didn't b. won't c. doesn't d. don't
- You waste your time.
a. shouldn't b. can c. must d. should

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother (always watching) TV in the evening.
2. A fish (can) fly, but it can swim.
3. Yesterday, I (go) to the library.
4. She (writes) an email right now.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina asks Heba about her free time.

Dina : How do you spend your free time?

Heba : I spend my free time with my ①

Dina : ② do you like to go?

Heba : We like to go for walks in nature.

Dina : Are ③ any lovely places in your city?

Heba : Yes, there are some parks and ④ in our city.

Dina : Thank you for your time.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your learning plan"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. It was a bit

- a. cold b. cool c. warm d. hot

2. Many kids went to the

- a. beach b. school c. garden d. cafe

3. They flew

- a. planes b. kites c. bikes d. stories

2 B: Listen and complete:

1. They rode their

2. Last was really fun!

3. It was the time to play outside.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Air is all around us, but it is

- a. dirty b. small c. noisy d. invisible

2. Ali is a learner. He learns best by doing activities and moving around.

- a. visual b. lazy c. kinesthetic d. quiet

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

tap - mouse - typing - keyboard - click

I always do my homework on the computer. I use the ① to write my assignments. It is used for ② I also use the ③ to move around the screen and ④ on things.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I like visiting new places every year. Last summer, I went to Sharm Elsheikh. I went there with my family. I travelled by plane as it is very comfortable and fast. Sharm Elsheikh is a wonderful place for a holiday. There's a lot to do and many different places to stay in. You can camp or stay in a hotel when you arrive. You can go to the tourist information center and find out a lot of information about the city. You should visit it on the first day. Sharm Elsheikh has some beautiful beaches. You can swim in the sea there. When it's windy, you should definitely try windsurfing. Also, you can take a boat trip to try fishing. You shouldn't walk too much in the sun. It's best to visit places early in the morning. Don't forget to go shopping. There are many beautiful things to buy. I think you will have a great time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "wonderful" in the third line means
 a. boring b. fantastic c. expensive d. upset
- Wind-surfing is a kind of sports.
 a. sand b. indoor c. water d. land

B. Answer the following questions:

- What shouldn't you do when you visit Sharm Elsheikh?

- Why do you think Sharm Elsheikh is a beautiful place for a holiday?

- Give a suitable title for the passage.

- What is the best time to visit the places?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We remember well when we get enough sleep.
 a. could b. can't c. couldn't d. can
- Layla an app to learn words at the moment.
 a. use b. uses c. is using d. used

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Listen! The girls _____ (sing).
2. The cat sat _____ (under) the mat.
3. If he doesn't come, we _____ (leave) without him.
4. I didn't give up _____ (so) I believe in myself.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is asking Dina some questions.

Mona : When do you get up?

Dina : I usually ① _____ at 6:30 Am.

Mona : 2 do you live with?

Dina : I live with my family.

Mona : Do you listen to music?

Dina : No, I 3

Mona : How 4 _____ do you go to the cinema?

Dina : I go to the cinema twice a month.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

“Different ways people learn”

1. Introduction
 2. Background
 3. Methodology
 4. Results
 5. Conclusion
 6. References
 7. Appendix
 8. Glossary
 9. Index
 10. Table of Contents

Test 5

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- The sun is a big _____.
a. square b. star c. rock d. desk
- The sun is very _____ for life.
a. normal b. usual c. important d. bad
- The sun is so _____.
a. cold b. cool c. hot d. small

2 B: Listen and complete:

- It can melt _____.
- The earth goes round the sun _____ a year.
- The sun gives us light and _____.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My favorite _____ has lots of useful information for students.
a. car b. park c. website d. pavement
- Her _____ in science made her a symbol of hope for many girls.
a. achievement b. agreement c. statement d. equipment

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

fought - defended - protected - officer - true

Egypt has many heroes and role models throughout history. I'm proud to say that my role model is Ahmed El-Mansy, a ① _____ hero and a great ② _____ in the Egyptian army. He ③ _____ the terrorists and ④ _____ our country.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We study a lot of subjects at school. Each subject teaches us certain things in our life. Foreign languages enable us to communicate with other people and to know how other people think and talk. We learn the Arabic language to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us. Mathematics helps us to think. History tells us about our own country and the people of the world around us. Geography tells us about plants, animals and people, where and how they live and what they do. Physical Education helps us grow strong and keep us fit. We learn biology so as to tell us about living things. Computers are also very important because they help us do difficult sums quickly and can store information. They can also work with words and numbers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In _____, we can learn about living things.
a. Maths b. History c. English d. Biology
- If you want to know about your own country, you should study _____.
a. Physical education b. History c. English d. Maths

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?

- Why do we learn foreign languages?

- What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

- How is Physical Education useful?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- _____ it was very hot, we decided to go out.
a. So b. As c. Because d. Although
- What _____ if you study hard?
a. happen b. would happen c. happened d. will happen

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (travel) to Aswan in 2005.
2. I (can) play football as it is raining.
3. We (should) drink unhealthy juice.
4. We are (write) our homework now.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is asking Mona about her favorite sport.

Mariam : What are you doing, Mona?

Mona : I'm reading a ①

Mariam : ② is this book about?

Mona : It's about sports.

Mariam : Great! I like sports. What's your favorite sport?

Mona : My favorite sport is ③

Mariam : ④ you play tennis every day?

Mona : Yes, I do. I play it every day with my sister.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your digital life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. Malek has got brothers.

a. three

b. two

c. five

d. four

2. Malek's father is a / an

a. teacher

b. doctor

c. vet

d. engineer

3. His mother is a / an

a. teacher

b. doctor

c. vet

d. engineer

B: Listen and complete:

1. They live in a nice in Cairo.

2. Mother and father work day and

3. They bring Malek up to love his

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher gave a clear of the lesson.

a. celebration

b. invitation

c. explanation

d. decoration

2. There was an important about the school trip.

a. announcement

b. appointment

c. improvement

d. punishment

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

auditory - maps - pictures - visual - organize

Every person learns differently. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are ① learners. They like to read books, look at ② and use colorful notes. They often make ③ and charts to ④ information.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Aswan is a **beautiful** Egyptian city. **It** is located in the south of Egypt. It is one of the most amazing cities in the world. It is known as the best city, especially in winter, because of its warm weather. It is the southern gate of Egypt. Its unique location makes it a peaceful city. People in this city are helpful and honest.

Tourists like to visit many places in Aswan because it has a lot of ancient monuments. They enjoy visiting the High Dam, El Nabatat Island, and the Nubian Museum, which reflects the history of Nubia, their life, and traditions. Aswan Botanical Garden is a special one, which many people have visited, including the Ministry of India and Queen Elizabeth of Britain. Tourists can also buy souvenirs from the bazaars. It is a wonderful city.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The word "**beautiful**" means
 a. attractive b. ugly c. ancient d. old
- The underlined word "**It**" refers to
 a. Egypt b. Britain c. Aswan d. India

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- Why do you think tourists like visiting Aswan in winter?

- Where is Aswan located?

- Where can tourists buy souvenirs?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Nada go to school yesterday.
 a. wasn't b. don't c. doesn't d. didn't
- Ali late for school. His teacher loves him.
 a. never is b. always is c. is never d. is always

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We _____ (can't) focus better when have a goal.
2. If I _____ (studied) hard, I will pass the test..
3. I _____ (revise) my vocabulary notes right now.
4. You _____ (shouldn't) listen to your teacher.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about favorite subjects.

Hany : Hello, Ramz. What is your favorite subject?

Ramz : Hello, Hany. I  _____ English.

Many : 2 _____ do you like it?

Ramz : Because it is an interesting subject.

Hany : How 3 _____ do you have it?

Ramz : Five times a week.

Hany : Do you like music?

Ramz : Yes, I it very much.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A story you read"

100

Test 7

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. We mustn't be to others.

- a. kind b. nice c. unkind d. good

2. We mustn't be to others.

- a. kind b. unfair c. fair d. good

3. We must each rule.

- a. break b. feel c. fail d. follow

B: Listen and complete:

1. We believe every student is a part of a

2. We believe every student is a of the word.

3. We should be

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should study hard to your English.

- a. waste b. close c. forget d. improve

2. Before you make a big, talk to your parents.

- a. decision b. mistake c. celebration d. invitation

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

doing - making - seeing - devices - information

Technology has changed the way students learn. with ① like tablets and laptops, they can access ② easily. Different students learn in different ways- some by ③ and others by ④ activities.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr Ramadan and his family decided to visit his brother Mr Fawzy in Cairo. He took his wife, Mrs Nawal, his two daughters Mona and Maha and his young son Karim to the train station. They bought the tickets and waited for the train. When the train arrived at 10 pm, they got into it. Mona sat next to Maha and Karim sat next to his mother. Mr Ramadan sat behind them. Few minutes later, a beautiful lady arrived and sat next to Mr Ramadan. She looked at him and smiled. He also smiled to her, but no word. Because it was late at night and the journey to Cairo was long, most of the passengers fell asleep. Again, the lady smiled to Mr Ramadan and pretended being asleep. When the train arrived at Giza station early in the morning, Mr Ramadan found that the lady next to him wasn't there and his mobile phone wasn't there either.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They arrived at Cairo Station.....
a. at night b. in the morning c. in the afternoon d. next week
- The underlined word "it" refers to.....
a. the station b. the ticket c. the train d. the phone

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
.....
- Why did most of the passengers fell asleep?
.....
- How did Mr Ramadan and his family travel to Cairo?
.....
- What do you think of the beautiful lady?
.....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What did you ?
a. reading b. read c. reads d. have read
- How often do you go to school? - Five a week.
a. years b. time c. times d. rides

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If it rains tomorrow, we (stay) indoors.
2. You (must) forget your passport if you want to travel.
3. What (do you) doing right now?
4. I can speak English, (and) I can't speak French.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Maya and Samir are talking about a school project

Maya: I heard about the "Let's Make a Difference" project. Are you going to participate?

Samir: Yes, I am! I think it's a great opportunity to volunteer and help the community.

Maya: That's ①! I'd love to be a part of it, too.

Samir: Absolutely! And it's important to protect ② animals.

Maya: I agree. If we don't act now, the consequences will be negative.

Samir: You're right. We ③ start now.

Maya: That's true. Every little action helps to ④ the situation.

Samir: Exactly! We must all do our part.

E: Writing

Write an email of "80" words about "Your daily routine using technology".

- 8 Your name is Youssef and your email address is youssef22@moe.com.
Your friend is Wael and his email address is wael20@moe.com.**

New Message
— / ✕

To

From

Subject

.....

.....

.....

Cc Bcc

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Send

▼

Test 8

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- I was a big.....
 a. decision b. vision c. revision d. pollution
- Her small action made a big.....
 a. cake b. impact c. fact d. sky
- In the end, Sara chose to.....
 a. talk b. run away c. leave d. join

2 B: Listen and complete:

- She felt..... and made new friends.
- Sara had to join a..... cleanup.
- They were going to post pictures.....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's important to think about the..... of your actions before you choose.
 a. surprises b. holidays c. consequences d. questions
- Don't..... the advice of your parents; they know what's best.
 a. follow b. ignore c. listen d. do

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

journey - electric - protect - reduce - electricity

Egypt has launched its first hybrid bus in Aswan. It runs on both ① and diesel, helping ② pollution and ③ the environment. This bus is just the start of Egypt's ④ to greener transportation.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology has changed the way students learn. With devices like tablets and laptops, they can access information easily and learn at their own speed. Different students learn in different ways—some by seeing, some by listening, and others by doing activities. Modern classrooms now have smartboards and video calls, which help students learn better and connect with people around the world.

But there are also problems. Students need to learn how to use technology wisely and stay focused without getting distracted. Still, technology makes learning more interesting and helps students get ready for the future. A good mix of old and new learning methods is important.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students use digital devices like tablets and laptops to
 - a. play games in class
 - b. take breaks from learning
 - c. access information and communicate
 - d. avoid doing homework
2. One challenge of digital learning is that students must
 - a. stop using the internet completely
 - b. learn to use technology wisely and stay focused
 - c. ignore their classmates
 - d. study only with books

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Mention some digital devices students use to learn today.

4. Name three types of learning styles mentioned in the text.

5. How do modern classrooms use technology to improve learning?

6. What is the main idea of the text?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We _____ understand well when are distracted.
- a. could b. can c. couldn't d. can't

2. We _____ to travel next month.

- a. will b. going c. are going d. are go

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The soldiers _____ (fight) bravely to protect their country in 1973.
2. We _____ (often) read books. we do this all the time.
3. I can't come to the party as I _____ (study) my lessons.
4. If it _____ (will rain) tomorrow, we won't go out.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ola and Heba are talking about hobbies.

Heba : How are you, Ola?

Ola : I am fine, 1

Heba : What's your favorite hobby?

Ola : I like playing 2 _____

Heba : When do you play chess?

Ola : I play it in my free

Heba :  do you play it with?

Ola : I play it with my brother.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

“Ahmed El-Mansy”

[illegible]

Test 9

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- Egypt has launched its first bus in Aswan.
a. normal b. traditional c. hybrid d. usual
- The bus was made by an Egyptian.....
a. factory b. school c. park d. company
- It on electricity and diesel.
a. walks b. runs c. plays d. travels

2 B: Listen and complete:

- This bus is just the start of Egypt's.....
- Most parts are made locally, creating.....
- The bus helps reduce.....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Learning new skills can open up many
a. opportunities b. bags c. windows d. streets
- She has a real for art; She paints every day.
a. hate b. dislike c. passion d. anger

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

inspires - smiles - hardly - kind - hard

My role model is my mother. She works ① every day and helps others. Even when she's tired. She ② and takes care of our family. She ③ me to be ④ to everyone.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In Zagazig, there is a brave community helper named Muhammed. He is a firefighter. Every day, he puts on his shiny red helmet and jumps into his big red fire truck. When the alarm rings, he rushes to the fire station.

He slides down the pole and hops into the fire truck. He helps people in need. Muhammed wears a thick, yellow jacket to protect himself from the flames. He carries a hose to spray water on the fire and save the day. Sometimes, he even rescues cute kittens stuck in tall trees. Muhammed is a hero in Zagazig. Children wave and smile when they see him. He teaches them about fire safety.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children Muhammed very much.

- a. love b. hate c. dislike d. kill

2. Muhammed works as a

- a. volunteer b. firefighter c. teacher d. vet

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. What does Muhammed teach children in Zagazig?

.....

5. When does he rush to the fire station?

.....

6. Why does he wear a yellow jacket?

.....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was tired, I went to bed early.

- a. although b. so c. but d. because

2. We listen to our parents advice.

- a. shouldn't b. must c. aren't d. mustn't

6

1. She _____ (draw) a picture now.
2. We _____ (visit) our uncle next week.
3. I _____ (can) play chess when I was young.
4. We _____ (mustn't) respect different cultures.

Omar and Nada are talking about Ahmed El-Mansy.

Omar : Hi, Nada. Do you know Ahmed El-Mansy?

Nada : Yes of course. He was a brave Egyptian ① _____.

Omar : What was his **2** _____ ?

Nada : He was an ③ _____ in the Egyptian Army?

Omar : 4 _____ did he do for Egypt?

Nada : He fought the terrorists.

Omar : We should always remember him as a true hero.

E: Writing

“Different ways of learning”

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68

69

70

71

72

73

74

75

76

77

78

79

80

81

82

83

84

85

86

87

88

89

90

91

92

93

94

95

96

97

98

99

100

Test 10

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- learning has become a key part of education.
a. Normal b. Traditional c. Usual d. Digital
- Students can learn
a. where b. nowhere c. anywhere d. somewhere
- Students can work with others the world.
a. around b. at c. in d. tour

B: Listen and complete:

- It gives the student, the to learn.
- Online learning needs and motivation.
- Online learning gives the students the to learn in their own way.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We need to the amount of waste we produce.
a. increase b. reduce c. make d. raise
- He received a / an while playing football yesterday.
a. call b. passion c. injury d. prize

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

program - drawing - watching - work - technology

My dream is to become a graphic designer. I enjoy ① and using ② last summer, I joined a free art ③ in my city. It was hard ④, but I learned a lot.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

If you want to be healthy, you should eat some of all types of food. We need to drink eight glasses of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese help us to have **strong** bones. Meat, cheese, and nuts have protein in them and we need protein to have a strong body. Examples of healthy snacks are fruit and nuts. People need to eat five to ten pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day. People often like fast food because **it** has a lot of fat and sugar in it. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is fresh.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Meat has _____ in it.
a. protein b. carbohydrate c. salt d. vitamin
- The word _____ is the opposite of the underlined word "**Strong**".
a. serious b. weak c. active d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the best title for this passage?

- Give examples of healthy snacks.

- Why do you think we need dairy products?

- What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They are _____ visit their grandparents next month.
a. go to b. going c. going to d. go
- If it _____ tomorrow, we will stay indoors.
a. will rain b. rain c. rains d. raining

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- He was hungry, _____ (**because**) he made a sandwich.
- We _____ (**must**) throw rubbish on the ground.

3. You _____ (shouldn't) listen to your teacher carefully.
4. She _____ (reads) a story last week.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Sara are talking about their future goals.

Ali : Hi Sara! What are you going to be in the future?

Sara : Hi Ali! I'm going to be a doctor. It's my dream ① _____.

Ali : Wow! That's great. ② are you going to achieve your future goal?

Sara : I'm going to study hard, read more about science, and keep practicing every day.

What **3** _____ your dream job?

Ali : I'm going to be an engineer. I'm going to improve my math skills and learn new things.

Sara : That's amazing! We're going to work hard and stay positive to reach our

Ali : Yes, and we're going to help and encourage each other.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A hero who made a difference "Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem" "

1. Introduction
 2. Background
 3. Methodology
 4. Results
 5. Conclusion
 6. References
 7. Appendix
 8. Index
 9. Table of Contents
 10. Figure
 11. Table
 12. Figure
 13. Table
 14. Figure
 15. Table
 16. Figure
 17. Table
 18. Figure
 19. Table
 20. Figure
 21. Table
 22. Figure
 23. Table
 24. Figure
 25. Table
 26. Figure
 27. Table
 28. Figure
 29. Table
 30. Figure
 31. Table
 32. Figure
 33. Table
 34. Figure
 35. Table
 36. Figure
 37. Table
 38. Figure
 39. Table
 40. Figure
 41. Table
 42. Figure
 43. Table
 44. Figure
 45. Table
 46. Figure
 47. Table
 48. Figure
 49. Table
 50. Figure
 51. Table
 52. Figure
 53. Table
 54. Figure
 55. Table
 56. Figure
 57. Table
 58. Figure
 59. Table
 60. Figure
 61. Table
 62. Figure
 63. Table
 64. Figure
 65. Table
 66. Figure
 67. Table
 68. Figure
 69. Table
 70. Figure
 71. Table
 72. Figure
 73. Table
 74. Figure
 75. Table
 76. Figure
 77. Table
 78. Figure
 79. Table
 80. Figure
 81. Table
 82. Figure
 83. Table
 84. Figure
 85. Table
 86. Figure
 87. Table
 88. Figure
 89. Table
 90. Figure
 91. Table
 92. Figure
 93. Table
 94. Figure
 95. Table
 96. Figure
 97. Table
 98. Figure
 99. Table
 100. Figure
 101. Table
 102. Figure
 103. Table
 104. Figure
 105. Table
 106. Figure
 107. Table
 108. Figure
 109. Table
 110. Figure
 111. Table
 112. Figure
 113. Table
 114. Figure
 115. Table
 116. Figure
 117. Table
 118. Figure
 119. Table
 120. Figure
 121. Table
 122. Figure
 123. Table
 124. Figure
 125. Table
 126. Figure
 127. Table
 128. Figure
 129. Table
 130. Figure
 131. Table
 132. Figure
 133. Table
 134. Figure
 135. Table
 136. Figure
 137. Table
 138. Figure
 139. Table
 140. Figure
 141. Table
 142. Figure
 143. Table
 144. Figure
 145. Table
 146. Figure
 147. Table
 148. Figure
 149. Table
 150. Figure
 151. Table
 152. Figure
 153. Table
 154. Figure
 155. Table
 156. Figure
 157. Table
 158. Figure
 159. Table
 160. Figure
 161. Table
 162. Figure
 163. Table
 164. Figure
 165. Table
 166. Figure
 167. Table
 168. Figure
 169. Table
 170. Figure
 171. Table
 172. Figure
 173. Table
 174. Figure
 175. Table
 176. Figure
 177. Table
 178. Figure
 179. Table
 180. Figure
 181. Table
 182. Figure
 183. Table
 184. Figure
 185. Table
 186. Figure
 187. Table
 188. Figure
 189. Table
 190. Figure
 191. Table
 192. Figure
 193. Table
 194. Figure
 195. Table
 196. Figure
 197. Table
 198. Figure
 199. Table
 200. Figure
 201. Table
 202. Figure
 203. Table
 204. Figure
 205. Table
 206. Figure
 207. Table
 208. Figure
 209. Table
 210. Figure
 211. Table
 212. Figure
 213. Table
 214. Figure
 215. Table
 216. Figure
 217. Table
 218. Figure
 219. Table
 220. Figure
 221. Table
 222. Figure
 223. Table
 224. Figure
 225. Table
 226. Figure
 227. Table
 228. Figure
 229. Table
 230. Figure
 231. Table
 232. Figure
 233. Table
 234. Figure
 235. Table
 236. Figure
 237. Table
 238. Figure
 239. Table
 240. Figure
 241. Table
 242. Figure
 243. Table
 244. Figure
 245. Table
 246. Figure
 247. Table
 248. Figure
 249. Table
 250. Figure
 251. Table
 252. Figure
 253. Table
 254. Figure
 255. Table
 256. Figure
 257. Table
 258. Figure
 259. Table
 260. Figure
 261. Table
 262. Figure
 263

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. Reem bought a

- a. tablet b. speaker c. headphones d. mobile phone

2. Then she sent a/an to the shop

- a. letter b. message c. email d. book

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ali : What's your favourite sport?

Youssef : ①

Ali : Where do you play it?

Youssef : ②

Ali : Can I come with you?

Youssef : ③

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You will if you work hard and stay focused.

- a. fail b. run c. succeed d. feel

2. It's important to make a good for your future.

- a. plane b. planet c. plan d. plant

3. He chose painting because it his talent.

- a. watches b. matches c. fits d. runs

4. I hope I can get a job that me happy.

- a. studies b. reads c. makes d. kills

5. Mo Salah played well. He 3 goals.

- a. get b. bought c. scored d. slept

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

In some countries, people first had televisions about 90 years ago. Before 1935, the picture on a TV screen was smaller than a post card.

Most TV programmes were in black and white. In 1940s, TV companies in the USA began to make colour programmes. However, colour TVs were very expensive, so most people who had televisions watched in black and white. Although Egypt had TVs in the 1960s, the country made its first colour TV programme in 1973. Also, the first remote controls were made in 1984.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did people first have televisions?

2. Why didn't most people in the past use colour TVs?

3. How big was the picture on a TV screen before 1935?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Egypt made its first colour TV in -----

a. 1935

b. 1973

c. 1960

d. 1940

5. Colour TV programmes were ----- those ones in black and white.

a. during

b. before

c. after

d. at the same time

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Look at the clouds! It ----- (rain).

2. If I have a school trip, I ----- (would) get up early.

3. How ----- (long) do you go to school?

4. I ----- (live) in Zagazig in 2015.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your hero"

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. Sama bought a

- a. phone b. mobile phone c. camera d. table

2. She took many with it.

- a. pictures b. messages c. letters d. emails

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Noor and Hana are talking about the summer holiday.

Noor : How are you, Hana?

Hana : I'm fine, thanks.

Noor : Where are you going to go the next summer holiday?

Hana : ①

Noor : Sharm El Sheikh! Who will you go with?

Hana : ②

Noor : ③ ?

Hana : We will travel by bus.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students need to their time before exams.

- a. waste b. lose c. ignore d. organize

2. The library provides a place to study.

- a. peaceful b. noisy c. lazy d. loud

3. Learning a new language is always a

- a. class b. book c. challenge d. try

4. We should use technology

- a. carelessly b. lazily c. wisely d. strongly

5. I like reading on my phone.

- a. ebooks b. booklets c. notebooks d. pens

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Baher. I'm from Port Said. I want to be a doctor so I always work hard at school. My favorite subjects are science and English. I also want to speak good English with other children in different places. My teachers are very good. I like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from India! My favorite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Baher from?

2. What subjects is Baher interested in?

3. What is Baher's goal?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Baher didn't _____ in England last year?

a. swim in a river

b. meet new friends

c. practise his English

d. cycle to school

5. Baher has a friend from _____.

a. North America

b. Asia

c. Europe

d. Africa

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A lion _____ (can) fly.

2. I _____ (never am) active.

3. Yesterday, I _____ (go) to the library.

4. The cat sat _____ (under) the mat.

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Digital life"

Listening Material

Test Unit 1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I want to share my digital day with you. I always start my morning by checking my phone. I usually have three or four messages from school friends. At breakfast, I often use my tablet to search for news. My favorite app shows me interesting facts about animals. I never eat without looking at something on my screen.

Test Unit 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My new teacher of English is very kind and helpful. She speaks clearly and gives fun activities. We play word games and learn new words every day. She always smiles and gives us advice. When I make mistakes, she helps me understand. I feel happy in her class. I like English now because she makes learning easy and fun.

Test Unit 3

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Sama. I'm in grade 1 in a prep school. My school life is fun and busy. Every morning, I go to school at 8:00 am. My favorite subject is science because I love doing experiments. I also enjoy math and learning new things every day. During break, I play with my friends in the playground.

Test Unit 4

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Salma likes to create things in her free time. Her favorite hobby is making models from paper. She feels happy and never stressed while working. She uses simple materials and works carefully. Her models look great. Salma wants to take part in the annual fair and show her work to others.

Test Unit 5

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My dream job is to be a doctor. I want to help sick people and make them feel better. Doctors work in hospitals. They talk to patients, and give them medicine. To become a doctor, I need to study hard and get good grades. I want to go to university and learn about the human body and health. My parents always support me, and I believe I can do it.

Test Unit 6

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last Saturday, our class joined a beach clean-up. It was our responsibility to help the ocean. We picked up trash to protect sea creatures from danger. Using reusable bags, we worked as a teamwork. The judge praised our effort and gave us a trophy. Though we were tired, we felt proud. Our teacher nodded and smiled. This meaningful work helps the environment

for future generations. Everyone clapped when we won the prize. Small actions make a real impact!.

General tests

Test 1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Huda is my best friend. Every day, she wakes up early to go for a walk and then enjoys a healthy breakfast. She is interested in reading. On weekends, Huda loves to go to the local public library to read a book. She dreams of writing her own book one day in the future.

Test 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hello, my name is Omar, and I am 11 years old. I always think about my future career. I wish to find a profession that matches my talent and makes me happy. I love helping people, so I want to become a doctor one day. After school, I will go to university to study medicine.

Test 3

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

When you check social media, it's important to remember a few simple rules that can keep you safe. Never share personal information with anyone. Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to talk to you and don't click on any links they send you. Don't use apps that you don't know.

Test 4

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last summer was really fun! It was a bit hot, and the days were long. It was the perfect time to play outside. Many kids went to the beach. They swam in the cool water, and played with their friends. Some kids liked to go to the park. They climbed on the trees, rode their bikes, and flew kites.

Test 5

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The sun is a big, bright star that gives us light and heat. It's very important for life on Earth. Without the sun, our planet would be dark and cold. The sun is so hot that it can melt metal. The Earth goes round the sun once a day.

Test 6

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Malek. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. My father and mother work day and night to help us live a happy life. They bring us up to love our country, Egypt. We live in a nice flat in Cairo.

Test 7

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

At our school, we believe every student is a part of a community and is a citizen of the world. As global citizens, we must follow each rule and law to keep everyone safe and happy. We mustn't be unkind and

unfair to others. Instead, we should be kind and help each other every day.

Test 8

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Sara had to decide between joining a beach cleanup or staying home to relax. It was a hard decision. She knew her friends were going, and they were going to post pictures online. She also wanted to be responsible and do something positive. In the end, Sara chose to join. She felt proud and even made new friends. Her small action made a big impact.

Test 9

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egypt has launched its first hybrid bus in Aswan. It runs on both electricity and diesel, helping reduce pollution and protect the environment. The bus was made by an Egyptian company and includes modern technology like smart navigation and quiet engines. It supports Egypt's Vision 2030 for clean, smart cities. Most parts of the bus are made locally, creating jobs. This bus is just the start of Egypt's journey to greener, smarter transportation.

Test 10

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Digital learning has become a key part of modern education. With devices like tablets, smart boards, and smartphones, students can learn anywhere and work with others around the world. Online learning needs focus and motivation, but it also gives students the chance to learn in their own way.

Al Azhar

Test 1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Reem bought a mobile phone. There was a problem with it. The screen was damaged and she sent an email to the shop.

Test 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Sama bought a tablet. It was nice. She sent many messages with it.